TME® 10 Software Distribution

Pristine and Migration Scenarios

Version 3.1.5

TME® 10 Software Distribution

Pristine and Migration Scenarios

Version 3.1.5

Contents

What's New in This Release

Release 3.1.5 of TME 10 Software Distribution contains the following new or changed functionalities:

Support for New Platforms

TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 adds support for the following platforms:

- Windows 2000 (Professional and Server)
- Windows NT 4.0 (Service Pack 5 and 6a)
- OS/2, version 4.5 (Warp server for e-business)
- AIX, version 4.3.*x*

New Pristine Scenarios

TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 Client can be installed on a pristine workstation in the following environments:

- Windows 2000 Professional
- Windows 2000 Server
- Windows NT 4.0 Server/Workstation
- OS/2 4.5 (Warp Server for e-business)
- AIX 4.3.3

This is in addition to the following pristine installation environments, which are maintained from the previous release:

- Windows 3.11
- Windows 95
- Windows NT Version 3.51
- OS/2 3.0.*x* (Warp)

Complete Platform Support Table

Table 1 on page x shows details of the platforms on which TME 10 Software Distribution is available. The columns in the table contain the following information:

Server Scratch Indicates whether the Server software can be installed from scratch. Scenarios describing how to carry out the scratch installations can be found in the relevant Quick Beginnings manuals.

Server Upgrade Indicates which version of the TME 10 Software Distribution Server can be upgraded, by supplying a reference that can be looked up in Table 2 on page xi. Scenarios describing how to carry out the upgrade can be found in the README file.

Client Scratch Indicates whether the Client software can be installed from scratch. Scenarios describing how to carry out the scratch installations can be found in the Client Installation and Customization manual.

Client Pristine Indicates whether the Client software can be installed on a pristine workstation (i.e. a workstation with no operating system installed). Scenarios describing how to carry out the pristine installations can be found in the Pristine and Migration Scenarios manual or the Installation Scenarios for AIX manual.

Client Upgrade Indicates which version of which Client software can be upgraded, by supplying a reference that can be looked up in Table 2 on page xi. Scenarios describing how to carry out the upgrade can be found in the relevant README files.

Table 1. TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 Platform Support

Platform		**Server**		**Client**		
OS	**Version**	**Scratch**	**Upgrade**	**Scratch**	**Pristine**	**Upgrade**
Windows	2000 Professional	Y		Y	Y	
	2000 Server	Y		Y	Y	
	NT 4.0 (SP5 & 6a)	Y	1	Y	Y	5
	NT 3.51	Y	1	Y	Y	5
	98			Y		6
	95			Y	Y	6
	3.11			Y	Y	7
OS/2	3.0*x*	Y	2	Y	Y	8, 11
	4.0	Y	2	Y		8, 11
	4.5 (Warp server for e-business)	Y		Y	Y	
AIX	3.2.5 - 4.2.1	Y	3	Y		9
	4.3.3	Y	3	Y	Y	9
NetWare	4.11 - 4.2*x*	Y	4	Y		10

Table 2 on page xi shows the products (and versions) that can be upgraded to TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5; the Reference column refers to Table 1.

Table 2. Products from which TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 can be upgraded

Reference (see Table 1)	Version installed	CSD or Fix Pack installed
TME 10 Software Distribution		
1	3.1.3 Server for Windows NT	XR21923
2	3.1.3 Server for OS/2	XR21923
3	3.1.4 Server for AIX	99/10
4	3.1.3 Server for NetWare	XR21924
5	3.1.3 Client for Windows NT	XR21923
6	3.1.3 Client for Windows 9x	XR21923
7	3.1.3 Client for Windows 3.1	XR21923
8	3.1.3 Client for OS/2	XR21923
9	3.1.4 Client for AIX	99/10
10	3.1.3 Client for NetWare	XR21924
NetView DM/2		
11	2.1	

Deletion of Pending Requests from Host

In the circumstances where TME 10 Software Distribution is executing software distribution requests from a focal point running Tivoli NetView Distribution Manager (NetView DM for MVS) Release 7, the MVS focal point can now issue a request to delete any distribution requests that are waiting to be processed or are being processed at the TME 10 Software Distribution server.

- In the case of a distribution request waiting to be processed, the original request will be deleted, and a report sent to the focal point confirming the deletion.
- In the case of a distribution request that is in execution when the deletion request arrives, the original request will be completed, and a report sent to the MVW focal point confirming the successful completion of the original request; no report concerning the unfulfilled deletion request will be sent.

In the case of nodes in a distribution network that are not running TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 (i.e. older versions of TME 10 Software Distribution or NetView DM/2) the deletion requests from the MVS focal point will be ignored.

This functionality runs in the background with no intervention required by the operator of the TME 10 Software Distribution server.

Note: As a consequence of this new functionality global names starting with *$DELETE.$PENDING* are reserved, and may not be used.

Changes to Statuses Reported by 'stattg'

The `stattg` command gives details of the status of the agent at the local target. A new parameter has been added to the command to reveal additional information.

In the previous releases, and when used without the new parameter, the command reports these statuses:

Available	Agent running and ready to process a request
Not Available	Agent not running or not accessible
Busy	Agent running a request and not available to process any other request.

There are circumstances in which it is possible for the server to have in its database more than one workstation name for the same agent.

For example, if a workstation has been re-defined to the server for some reason, the operator may have supplied a different workstation name than that originally used, but have used the original hostname. In this event, the agent now has the new workstation name, but the server has both workstation names defined; prior to this release the agent reported itself as being *Available* under both workstation names.

With this release, by using the parameter `-c`, in the event that the agent is *Available* and not *Busy*, the command now returns the status *Unknown* if the hostname of the agent is correct but the workstation name in the status request does not match the workstation name of the agent. Thus, by using the `-c` parameter, polling both workstation names will allow you to identify which is the correct one, as one will return the status *Available* and the other *Unknown*. If the parameter is not used, the original functionality is maintained.

However, before using this parameter you should consider the question of the timing of the `stattg` requests. When an agent receives a `stattg` request it sends the status to the server but is then not immediately available to satisfy another request. This means that a second request, received within, say, one minute of the first request, will return the status *Not Available*. If you are polling two suspect workstation names you should wait for this period before sending the second request.

This also means that if you send a `stattg` request using the asterisk wildcard to obtain the status of all or a group of workstations, the results received will depend on whether the *incorrect* workstation name comes before or after the *correct* one in the server's database:

Incorrect workstation name is polled first
The status of the *incorrect* workstation name will be given as *Unknown*, while the *correct* workstation will give *Not Available*

Correct workstation name is polled first
The status of the *correct* workstation name will be given as *Available* while the *incorrect* workstation will give *Not Available*

Thus, after using the asterisk wildcard with the `-c` parameter, you should individually poll each workstation name given as *Not Available*, waiting for approximately one minute before issuing each command. Workstations that are genuinely unavailable will report the same status as before; workstations that were unavailable while they were recovering from a previous stattg command will now report their true status.

The full details of the `stattg` command are given in *TME 10 Software Distribution Command Reference*, *TME 10 Software Distribution for NetWare Command Reference* and *TME 10 Software Distribution for AIX Reference*.

Chapter 1. OS/2 Warp 3.0.1 NetBIOS Pristine Installation Scenario

This chapter describes a scenario where the OS/2 Warp operating system, Multi-Protocol Transport Services (MPTS), and the TME 10 Software Distribution client are installed from OS/2 Warp Server on a *pristine workstation* (a workstation that has no software installed). After completion of the scenario, the TME 10 Software Distribution client communicates with its server over NetBIOS.

The scenario makes use of ANXIFS, a tool provided under SW4OS2\PRISTINE\ANXIFS.ZIP on the TME 10 Software Distribution CD-ROM. ANXIFS provides redirection software. You will find the sample response files, profiles, and other samples for this scenario on the TME 10 Software Distribution CD-ROM under SD4OS2\SAMPLES.

Environment

The environment used in this scenario is a stand-alone NetBIOS network composed of:

- An OS/2 TME 10 Software Distribution server (SERV01)
- A TME 10 Software Distribution client (installed under `D:\SOFTDIST`), used as both a remote TME 10 Software Distribution client and an ANXIFS server (IFS01)
- A pristine workstation (PS2CLI)

This environment is illustrated in Figure 1.

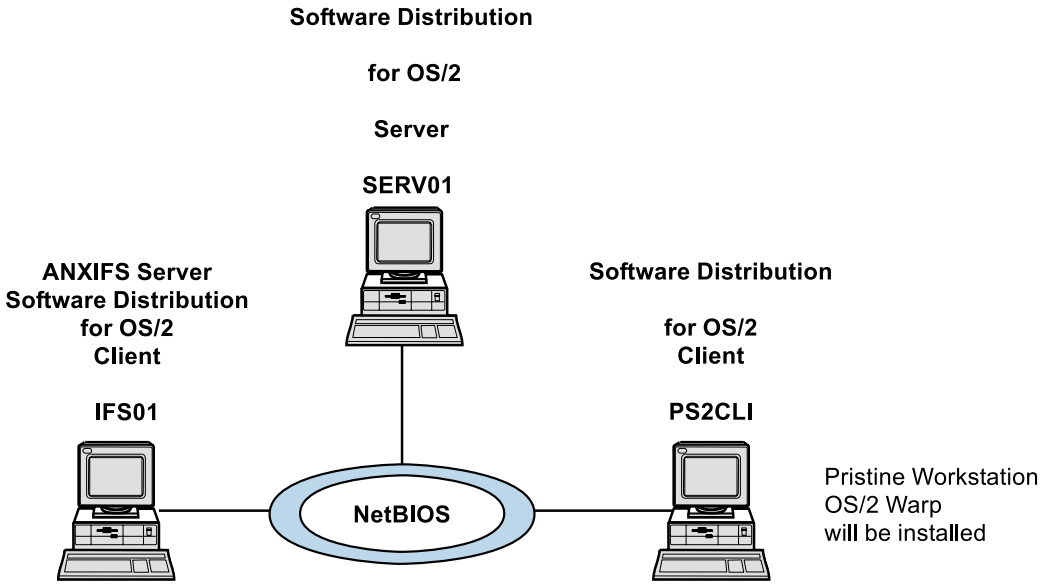


Figure 1. Pristine workstation OS/2 WARP server installation scenario environment

Prerequisites

For this scenario it is assumed that:

- TME 10 Software Distribution for OS/2 is installed on the TME 10 Software Distribution server SERV01.
- The TME 10 Software Distribution client is installed on the ANXIFS server IFS01 (under the `SOFTDIST` directory).
- The workstation where TME 10 Software Distribution for OS/2 client is to be installed is a pristine machine.
- CD-ROMs or installation diskettes are available for:
  - OS/2 Warp Server
  - Multi-Protocol Transport Services (MPTS)
  - TME 10 Software Distribution for OS/2 client
- Two blank diskettes are available for the OS/2 Warp Server you are installing.
- The ANXIFS server has a CD-ROM drive. In this scenario, the CD-ROM drive is referred to as the F: drive.
- The ANXIFS server has a minimum of 80 MB of free disk space.
- The pristine workstation has a minimum of 12 MB of RAM.
- The pristine workstation uses drive `Z:` to attach the TME 10 Software Distribution client IFS01, and drive `X:` to attach the directory where the images are stored on the ANXIFS server IFS01.

Objectives

This scenario installs the OS/2 Warp operating system, MPTS, and the TME 10 Software Distribution client on a pristine workstation attached to a token-ring network.

1. OS/2 CID utilities are copied to the ANXIFS server.
2. The following images are prepared on the ANXIFS server:
   - OS/2 Warp Server
   - Multi-Protocol Transport Services (MPTS)
   - TME 10 Software Distribution for OS/2 client
   - ANXIFS images
3. Startup diskettes required to start the pristine workstation are prepared at the ANXIFS server.

   The startup diskettes prepared for installing OS/2 Warp Server must be created using the same version of OS/2.
4. Response files to install OS/2 Warp Server, MPTS, and TME 10 Software Distribution for OS/2 client on the pristine workstation are prepared at the ANXIFS server (in this scenario, the same workstation as the TME 10 Software Distribution server).

5. Software object profiles and the software objects required to install OS/2 Warp Server, MPTS, and TME 10 Software Distribution for OS/2 client are prepared at the ANXIFS server (in this scenario, the same workstation as the TME 10 Software Distribution server).
6. Two installation requests are submitted from the TME 10 Software Distribution client.
7. The pristine workstation is started from the two startup diskettes.

Step 1: Preparing the ANXIFS Server Environment

Create a CID directory structure on the ANXIFS server that includes the following subdirectories:

IMG Stores the images of the software to be installed on the client.

RSP Stores the response files needed during installation.

LOG Stores .log files written by the installation program.

A diagram of the directory structure you must create is shown in Figure 2.

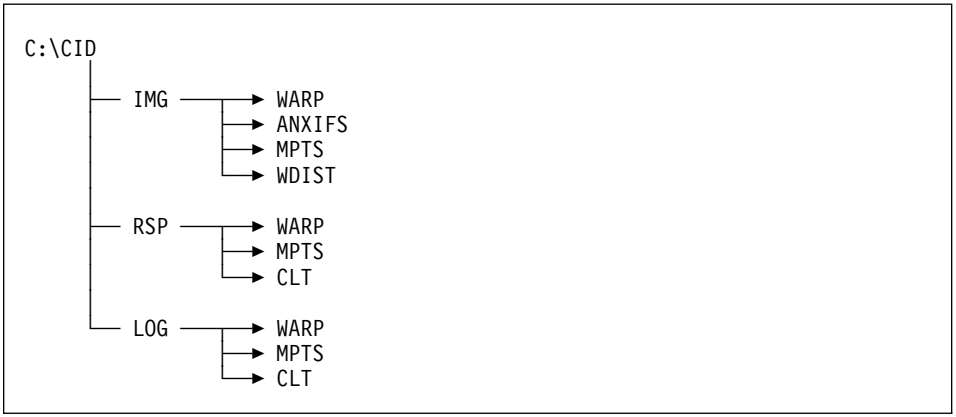


Figure 2. ANXIFS server directory structure

Copying OS/2 Warp Server CID Utilities to the ANXIFS Server

You need the following OS/2 Warp Server CID utilities installed on the ANXIFS server (IFS01) to prepare for OS/2 Warp Server installation:

- SEIMAGE.EXE
- SEDISK.EXE
- SEMAINT.EXE
- SEINST.EXE
- RSPINST.EXE

These utilities are not installed as part of a normal OS/2 Warp Server installation, so you must install them specifically.

Installing OS/2 Warp Server CID Utilities

Some OS/2 Warp Server utilities are located in the OS/2 Warp Server package, while others are obtained from the ServicePak. Perform the following steps to install them at your ANXIFS server:

1. Insert diskette 7 of OS/2 Warp Server in drive A: or insert the OS/2 Warp Server CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive.

   Note: In the examples that follow, F: is used as the CD-ROM drive; if this does not apply to your system, change the drive specification when you issue the command.

2. For the product diskette, enter the following command to unpack the CID utilities:

   ```
   UNPACK A:\CID C:\CID\IMG\WARP

   UNPACK A:\REQUIRED C:\CID\IMG\WARP
   ```

3. For the product CD-ROM, enter the following command to unpack the CID utilities:

   ```
   UNPACK F:\OS2IMAGE\DISK_7\CID C:\CID\IMG\WARP

   UNPACK F:\OS2IMAGE\DISK_7\REQUIRED C:\CID\IMG\WARP
   ```

The CID utilities can only be unpacked using the OS/2 Warp Server UNPACK.EXE program.

Step 2: Preparing Product Images on the ANXIFS Server

1. Use the SEIMAGE utility to create OS/2 Warp Server installation diskette images. This copies the OS/2 Warp Server diskette content into the `IMG\WARP` subdirectory.

   Place the OS/2 installation diskette in drive A: and enter the following command:

   ```
   C:\CID\IMG\WARP\SEIMAGE /S:A: /T:C:\CID\IMG\WARP
   ```

   If you are using the product CD-ROM, place it in the CD-ROM drive and enter the following command:

   ```
   XCOPY F:\OS2IMAGE\*.* C:\CID\IMG\WARP /S
   ```

   The utility creates the directory structure shown in Figure 3 on page 5.

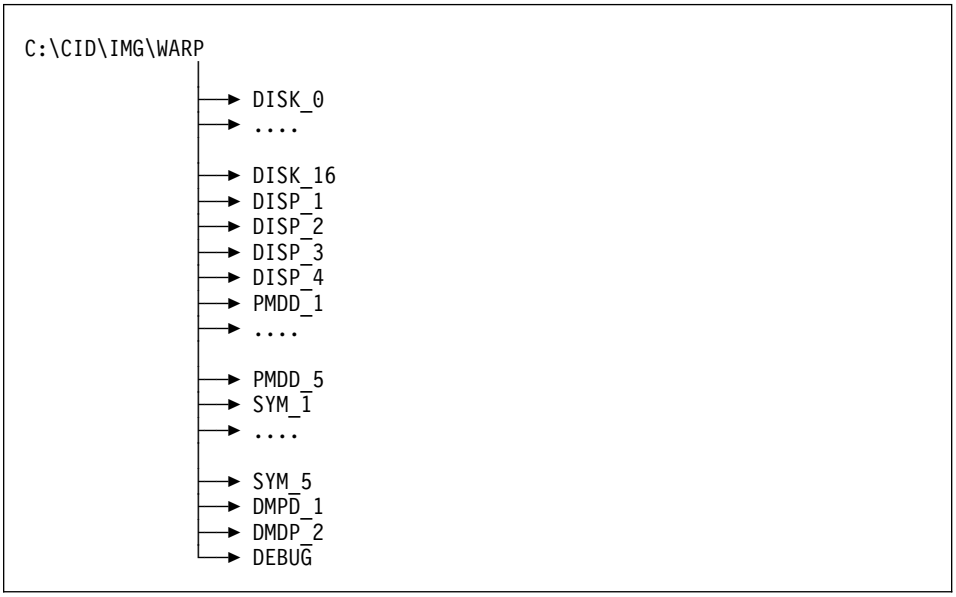


Figure 3. Subdirectories created for OS/2 WARP server

2. Use the LAPSDISK.EXE utility program provided by MPTS to create the MPTS install image.

   To create the MPTS image using the product diskette, insert the LAPS diskette into the A: drive and enter the following command:

   ```
   A:\LAPSDISK A: C:\CID\IMG\MPTS
   ```

   To create the MPTS image using the product CD-ROM, insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive and enter the following command:

   ```
   F:\CID\SERVER\MPTS\LAPSDISK F:\CID\SERVER\MPTS C:\CID\IMG\MPTS
   ```

3. Copy the `ANXIFS.ZIP` file from the F:\SD4OS2\PRISTINE subdirectory into the directory `C:\CID\IMG` by entering the following command:

   ```
   COPY F:\SD4OS2\PRISTINE\ANXIFS.ZIP C:\CID\IMG
   ```

   and from the `C:\CID\IMG` prompt enter the following command:

   ```
   PKUNZIP2 -d ANXIFS.ZIP
   ```

4. Copy the TME 10 Software Distribution image package from the CD-ROM into the directory `C:\CID\IMG` by entering the following command:

   ```
   XCOPY F:\SD4OS2\IMAGES\*.* C:\CID\IMG\SWDIST\*.* /S /V /E
   ```

Step 3: Preparing the Startup Diskettes at the ANXIFS Server

This step explains how to prepare startup diskettes that can be used to install OS/2 Warp Server on any pristine workstation.

1. Use the OS/2 Warp Server SEDISK utility to copy a minimal OS/2 Warp Server package to diskettes. Enter the following command:

   ```
   C:\CID\IMG\WARP\SEDISK /S:C:\CID\IMG\WARP /T:A:\
   ```

   You are prompted to insert a first and then a second diskette in your A: drive.

2. Leave the second startup diskette in the A: drive and from the C:\ prompt, enter the command:

   ```
   C:\CID\IMG\MPTS\THINLAPS  C:\CID\IMG\MPTS A: IBMTOK.NIF
   ```

3. Customize the `ANXCLT.INI` file located under `C:\CID\IMG\ANXIFS\CLIENT` to reflect your system requirements.

   Following is an example of `ANXCLT.INI` file.

```
; Adapter Number supported 0-1
adapter=0
; Max numbers of attach
numattaches=4
; Clientname is not mandatory if this key is not set a random name will
; be used
;clientname=ff
; Alias to be attached
; z is the disk letter
; ANXS01 is the ANXIFS server name
; REMAGT is the alias for the remote agent
; CODESRV is the alias for the CID directory where the images,
; response files, and log files are loaded.
attach=z,ANXS01,REMAGT
attach=x,ANXS01,CODESRV
```

4. Copy the files listed in Table 3 on page 7 to the startup diskette by entering the command:

   ```
   COPY <filename> A:
   ```

   where `<filename>` is the name of the file with its complete path.

Table 3. Files to Add to Startup Diskettes

File Name	File Location
ANXCLT.INI	C:\CID\IMG\ANXIFS\CLIENT
ANXIFCOM.IFS	C:\CID\IMG\ANXIFS\CLIENT
ANXIFCOM.SYS	C:\CID\IMG\ANXIFS\CLIENT
ANXIFPID.SYS	C:\CID\IMG\ANXIFS\CLIENT
ANXREQ.EXE	C:\CID\IMG\ANXIFS\CLIENT
ANXIFS.MSG	C:\CID\IMG\ANXIFS\CLIENT
FNDVDSK.CMD	C:\CID\IMG\ANXIFS\CLIENT
INSTALL.CMD	C:\CID\IMG\ANXIFS\CLIENT
OSO001.MSG	C:\CID\IMG\ANXIFS\CLIENT
FDISK.DAT	Create as described in “Step 4: Preparing a Procedure to Partition the Hard Disk” on page 7.
PREPDSK.CMD	Create as described in “Step 4: Preparing a Procedure to Partition the Hard Disk” on page 7.
CMD.EXE	Disk_1 (if it is not on the second diskette)
FDISK.COM	Disk_1
FORMAT.COM	Disk_2
VDISK.SYS	C:\OS2\BOOT

Note: The `VDISK.SYS` file must be retrieved from the same OS/2 version used to create the startup diskettes.

5. Edit the CONFIG.SYS file located on the second startup diskette (under the root directory) by adding a period (.) as the first value in the PATH and DPATH statements and modifying the following:

   ```
   SET_OS2_SHELL=CMD.EXE /K FNDVDSK.CMD
   ```

   Also add the following statements:

   ```
   DEVICE=\ANXIFPID.SYS
   DEVICE=\ANXIFCOM.SYS
   DEVICE=\VDISK.SYS 700,,
   IFS:\ANXIFCOM.IFS
   CALL=ANXREQ.EXE start
   ```

Step 4: Preparing a Procedure to Partition the Hard Disk

You can create a .CMD file to partition the hard disk on a pristine workstation. The file contains instructions for partitioning the disk and formatting the drives that are created. The following file, PREPDSK.CMD, is a sample procedure.

```
@echo off
cls
REM PREPDSK.CMD....
REM
echo Partitioning the disk...
FDISK /file:FDISK.DAT
```

In the above sample file, PREPDSK.CMD is invoked to partition the hard disk. The FDISK command used:

```
FDISK /file:FDISK.DAT
```

calls the FDISK.DAT file, which contains the following instructions:

```
/delete:all,/disk:1
/create,/size:100,/vtype:1
/create,/size:200,/vtype:2
```

Where:

/delete Deletes all partitions on a physical disk. In the `/disk:n` specification, `n` represents the disk number.

/create Creates a partition. If you use a Boot Manager, you can also specify a startup name (`/create:name`).

/size:nnn Specifies the size of the partition in megabytes.

/vtype:X Specifies the partition type. `X` can have any of the following values:

- **0=** Unusable
- **1=** Primary
- **2=** Logical
- **3=** Primary or logical

This sample procedure deletes all partitions and creates two new ones, a primary one of 100 MB and a logical one of 200 MB.

An alternative to this method is to enter the FDISK command stored on the second startup diskette. Insert the diskette into the A:\ prompt and enter:

```
A:\FDISK
```

The hard disk is partitioned. This is an attended method; at the command completion you are requested to restart the workstation. Insert the first startup diskette into the drive and press the Ctrl+Alt+Del keys to restart the system.

Step 5: Preparing Response Files on the ANXIFS Server

You must create three response files in the shared directory, `C:\CID\RSP`:

WARP\OS2.RSP Response file for SEINST.EXE

MPTS\MPTS.RSP	Response file for MPTS product installation
CLT\CLIENT.RSP	Response file for INSTALL.EXE (TME 10 Software Distribution for OS/2 client installation)

Examples of these three response files are provided below.

OS/2 Response File

This response file can be created by changing two lines in the sample response file, `SAMPLE.RSP`, provided with OS/2. To format the partition where the OS/2 operating system is to be installed, change the following parameters to read:

```
ExitOnError=1
FormatPartition=1
```

If the target installation drive is not C:, add the parameter:

```
TargetDrive:
```

to specify the drive to be used.

Samples of response files are provided in the SAMPLES directory. Copy the files into the directory `C:` by entering the command:

```
COPY F:\SD4OS2\SAMPLES\*.RSP C:\IMG\RSP
```

Example of an MPTS Response File

```
INST_SECTION = (
  INSTALL = product
  UPGRADE_LEVEL = new
  )

PROTOCOL = (
[PROT_MAN]

   DRIVERNAME = PROTMAN$

[IBMLXCFG]

   IBMTOK_nif = IBMTOK.nif
   TCPIP_nif = TCPIP.nif

[TCPIP_nif]

   DriverName = TCPIP$
   Bindings = IBMTOK_nif

[IBMTOK_nif]

   DriverName = IBMTOK$
   ADAPTER = "PRIMARY"
   MAXTRANSMITS = 6
   RECVBUFS = 2
   RECVBUFSIZE = 256
   XMITBUFS = 1

  )
```

Figure 4. Example of an MPTS Response File.

Example of a TME 10 Software Distribution Client Response File

```
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;  ;;;;;
;;                                                                    ;;
;;            Software Distribution for OS/2 Response File            ;;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;

; Target path
FILE = C:\SOFTDIST

; Work area
; It is the path for the data directory
WORK =C:\

; Software Distribution components to install
COMP = Distribution Client

DELETEBACKUP = No
SAVEBACKUP   = Yes
CFGUPDATE    = Auto
OVERWRITE    = Yes

; Software Distribution System Name.
; This identify the system in the network.
; It is mandatory.
SystemName   = ps2cli1

; Network drivers and Network addresses
; You may specify five types of Driver keywords.
; The value used is 1 or 0.
; Parm1 keyword is required for NETBIOS Driver.
; It is mandatory.
Driver.NETBIOS = 1
Parm1.NETBIOS = ps2cli1

; Distribution directories
BackupArea  = C:\SOFTDIST\BACKUP
ServiceArea = C:\SOFTDIST\SERVICE
Repository  = C:\SOFTDIST\REPOS
WorkArea    = C:\SOFTDIST\WORK

; Software Distribution Server Connection

; Distribution Server's System Name
ServerName = pinto
```

Figure 5 (Part 1 of 2). Example of a TME 10 Software Distribution Client Response File

```
; Network driver and Distribution Server's address
; (TCP/IP for TCP/IP, NB for NETBIOS, TLI for IPX)
ServerDriver = NB

ServerAddress = pinto
TargetAddress = ps2cli1
```

Figure 5 (Part 2 of 2). Example of a TME 10 Software Distribution Client Response File

Step 6: Customize The ANXSRV.INI File

Customize the `ANXSRV.INI` file located under the `C:\CID\IMG\ANXIFS\SERVER` directory. Figure 6 is a sample of the `ANXSRV.INI`. file.

```
Adapter=0;
Numclients=20
Servername=ANXS01
; REMAGT is the alias for the remote agent,
; d:\ is the drive where
; the software distribution client is installed
Alias=rw,single,REMAGT,d:\
; CODESRV is the alias for the CID directory,
; e:\cid is the directory where
; the images, response files, and log files are stored
Alias=rw,single,CODESRV,e:\cid
```

Figure 6. Example of an ANXSRV.INI file

Step 7: Preparing Software Object Profiles at the TME 10 Software Distribution Server

At the TME 10 Software Distribution server (SERV01), prepare the following software object profiles:

- warp.pro
- mpts.pro
- client.pro
- anxifs.pro

The software object profiles are used in the next step to build software objects at the TME 10 Software Distribution server. The files are then used to install OS/2 Warp Server on the TME 10 Software Distribution client. Samples of these software object profiles are provided on the CD-ROM under SD4OS2\SAMPLES. file.

Examples of the software object profiles required follow.

Warp Software Object Profile

```
GLOBAL NAME:            IBM.OS2V30.WARP.REF.1
DESCRIPTION:            IBM OS/2 3.0 Pristine
LOCAL NAME:             $(REPOSITORY)\OS2.CHG
CHANGE FILE TYPE:       OS2CID


    INSTALL PROGRAM:

    PROGRAM NAME:       x:\img\warp\seinst.exe
    PARAMETERS:         /S:x:\img\warp /T:a:\ /B:c: ►
                        /R:x:\rsp\warp\os2.rsp ►
                        /L1:x:\log\warp\os2.l1
```

Figure 7. Example of a WARP software object profile

Note: If the target installation drive is not C:, change the drive specification in the `/B:` parameter.

MPTS Software Object Profile

```
GLOBAL NAME:            IBM.MPTSV20.REF.1
DESCRIPTION:            IBM MPTS
LOCAL NAME:             $(REPOSITORY)\mpts.chg
CHANGE FILE TYPE:       OS2CID

INSTALL PROGRAM:
PROGRAM NAME:   x:\img\mpts\mpts.EXE
PARAMETERS:     /E:MAINT /S:x:\img\mpts /T:c:\ /TU:C:\ ►
                /R:x:\rsp\mpts\mpts.rsp ►
                /L1:x:\log\mpts\laps.l1
```

Figure 8. Example of an MPTS software object profile

Note: If the target installation drive is not C:, change the drive specification in the `/T:` and `/TU:` and parameters.

ANXIFS Client Software Object Profile

```
GLOBAL NAME:            IBM.ANXIFS.REF.1
DESCRIPTION:            IBM anxifs client
LOCAL NAME:             $(REPOSITORY)\anxifs.chg
CHANGE FILE TYPE:       OS2CID

    INSTALL PROGRAM:
        PROGRAM NAME:   x:\img\anxifs\client\anxifs.cmd
        PARAMETERS:     x: c: z:
```

Figure 9. Example of an ANXIFS software object profile

TME 10 Software Distribution Client Software Object Profile

```
GLOBAL NAME:        IBM.DIST.CLT31.REF.1
DESCRIPTION:        Software Distribution for OS/2 Client
LOCAL NAME:         $(REPOSITORY)\clt.chg
CHANGE FILE TYPE:   OS2CID
POSTREQ COMMAND:    $(TARGETDIR)\bin\fndend.cmd
INSTALL PROGRAM:
    PROGRAM NAME:    x:\img\clt\INSTALL.EXE
    PARAMETERS:      /S:x:\img\clt /R:x:\rsp\clt\client.RSP ►
                     /A:I /L1:x:\log\clt\LOG1.TXT ►
                     /L2:x:\log\clt\LOG2.TXT /X /T:$(TARGETDIR)
```

Figure 10. Example of a TME 10 Software Distribution client Software Object profile

Step 8: Building Software Objects at the TME 10 Software Distribution Server

1. Use the software object profiles prepared in the previous step to build software objects. Enter the following commands:

   ```
   nvdm bld warp.pro
   nvdm bld mpts.pro
   nvdm bld client.pro
   nvdm bld anxifs.pro
   ```

2. After these commands are executed, the software objects are built, and cataloged at the TME 10 Software Distribution server with the global name specified in the respective software object profiles.

This step does not need to be executed every time you install a pristine workstation, because the software objects are not workstation-specific.

Step 9: Starting Up TME 10 Software Distribution for OS/2 and ANXIFS

At the TME 10 Software Distribution server (SERV01), start TME 10 Software Distribution for OS/2 by entering the following command at the `C:` prompt:

```
NVDM START
```

Specify the target directory for TME 10 Software Distribution, and specify that the TARGETDIR shared token is to be used to install TME 10 Software Distribution, by entering the command:

```
NVDM ADDPM -A -I TARGETDIR=D:\SOFTDIST
```

Note that, in this example, each client installed using this scenario will have TME 10 Software Distribution installed in the directory D:\SOFTDIST.

Switch to the ANXIFS server workstation (IFS01) and start ANXIFS. From the `C:\CID\IMG\ANXIFS\SERVER\` prompt, enter the command:

```
APISERV ANXSRV.INI
```

Step 10: Submitting the Install Requests

At the TME 10 Software Distribution server, submit the install requests for the workstation PS2CLI1 by entering the commands:

```
NVDM INST IBM.OS2V30.WARP.REF.1 IBM.MPTSV20.REF.1 ►
          IBM.ANXIFS.REF.1 -N -W PS2CLI1

NVDM INST IBM.DIST.CLT31.REF.1 -N -W PS2CLI1
```

Step 11: Starting Up the TME 10 Software Distribution Client

At the pristine workstation:

1. Insert the first startup diskette into drive A:.
2. Turn the power on.
3. When prompted, insert the second startup diskette into drive A:. The startup continues and at the end a prompt is displayed on the screen. Enter the following command, which partitions the hard disk according to the instructions found in the FDISK.DAT file.

   ```
   prepdsk
   ```

   The execution of this command requires five to ten minutes.

   At command completion, you are requested to restart the workstation. Insert the first startup diskette into drive `A:` and press the Ctrl+Alt+Del keys to restart the system.
4. When prompted, insert the second startup diskette into the drive. At the end of startup, a prompt is displayed.
5. Enter the command:

```
install <client_name> <client_address> <sd_server> <srv_address>
```

Where:

<**client_name**> Is the unique name by which the client is known in the domain. It can be up to 32 characters long. For example, `ps2cli`.

<**client_address**> Is the address of the client. It can be the last 8 characters of the adapter address or a unique name within the domain. It can be up to 8 characters long. For example, `ps2cli`.

<**sd_server**> Is the name of the TME 10 Software Distribution server to which the pristine workstation is defined as a client.

<**srv_address**> Is the address of the server. It can be the last eight characters of the adapter address or a unique name within the domain. It can be up to 8 characters long. For example, `pinto`.

Do not turn the workstation off. Unattended installation of OS/2 Warp now begins. It may take up to two hours for the installation process to complete.

Chapter 2. OS/2 Warp 3.0.1 TCP/IP Pristine Installation Scenario Using NetBios

This chapter describes a scenario where the OS/2 Warp operating system, Multi-Protocol Transport Services (MPTS), IBM TCP/IP with the Network File Services (NFS) kit, and the TME 10 Software Distribution client are installed from OS/2 Warp Server on a *pristine workstation* (a workstation that has no software installed). After completion of the scenario, the TME 10 Software Distribution client communicates with its server over NetBios.

The scenario makes use of ANXIFS, a tool provided under SW4OS2\PRISTINE\ANXIFS.ZIP on the TME 10 Software Distribution CD-ROM. ANXIFS provides redirection software. You will find the sample response files, profiles, and other samples for this scenario on the TME 10 Software Distribution CD-ROM under SD4OS2\SAMPLES.

Environment

The environment used in this scenario is a stand-alone NetBIOS network composed of:

- An OS/2 TME 10 Software Distribution server (SERV01)
- A TME 10 Software Distribution client (installed under `D:\SOFTDIST`), used as both a remote TME 10 Software Distribution client and an ANXIFS server (IFS01)
- A pristine workstation (PS2CLI)

This environment is illustrated in Figure 11.

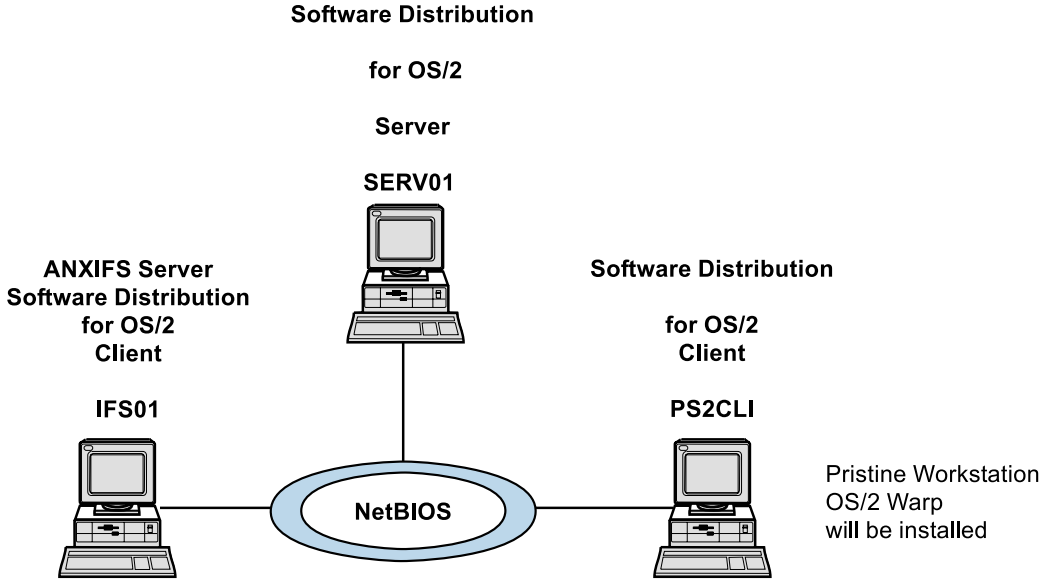


Figure 11. Pristine workstation OS/2 WARP server installation scenario environment

Prerequisites

For this scenario it is assumed that:

- TME 10 Software Distribution for OS/2 is installed on the TME 10 Software Distribution server SERV01.
- The TME 10 Software Distribution client is installed on the ANXIFS server IFS01 (under the `SOFTDIST` directory).
- The workstation where TME 10 Software Distribution for OS/2 client is to be installed is a pristine machine.
- CD-ROMs or installation diskettes are available for:
  - OS/2 Warp Server
  - Multi-Protocol Transport Services (MPTS)
  - TCP/IP 3.1
  - Network File Services (NFS) kit
  - TME 10 Software Distribution for OS/2 client
- Two blank diskettes are available for the OS/2 Warp Server you are installing.
- The ANXIFS server has a CD-ROM drive. In this scenario, the CD-ROM drive is referred to as the F: drive.
- The ANXIFS server has a minimum of 80 MB of free disk space.
- The pristine workstation has a minimum of 12 MB of RAM.
- The pristine workstation uses drive `Z:` to attach the TME 10 Software Distribution client IFS01, and drive `X:` to attach the directory where the images are stored on the ANXIFS server IFS01.

Objectives

This scenario installs the OS/2 Warp operating system, MPTS, TCP/IP with the NFS kit, and the TME 10 Software Distribution client on a pristine workstation attached to a token-ring network.

1. OS/2 CID utilities are copied to the ANXIFS server.
2. The following images are prepared on the ANXIFS server:
   - OS/2 Warp Server
   - Multi-Protocol Transport Services (MPTS)
   - TME 10 Software Distribution for OS/2 client
   - ANXIFS images
   - TCP/IP 3.1 with the NFS kit
3. Startup diskettes required to start the pristine workstation are prepared at the ANXIFS server.

   The startup diskettes prepared for installing OS/2 Warp Server must be created using the same version of OS/2.

4. Response files to install OS/2 Warp Server, MPTS, TCP/IP with the NFS kit, and the TME 10 Software Distribution for OS/2 client on the pristine workstation are prepared at the ANXIFS server (in this scenario, the same workstation as the TME 10 Software Distribution server).
5. Software object profiles and the software objects required to install OS/2 Warp Server, MPTS, TCP/IP with the NFS kit, and the TME 10 Software Distribution for OS/2 client are prepared at the ANXIFS server (in this scenario, the same workstation as the TME 10 Software Distribution server).
6. Two installation requests are submitted from the TME 10 Software Distribution client.
7. The pristine workstation is started from the two startup diskettes.

Step 1: Preparing the ANXIFS Server Environment

Create a CID directory structure on the ANXIFS server that includes the following subdirectories:

IMG Stores the images of the software to be installed on the client.

RSP Stores the response files needed during installation.

LOG Stores .log files written by the installation program.

A diagram of the directory structure you must create is shown in Figure 12.

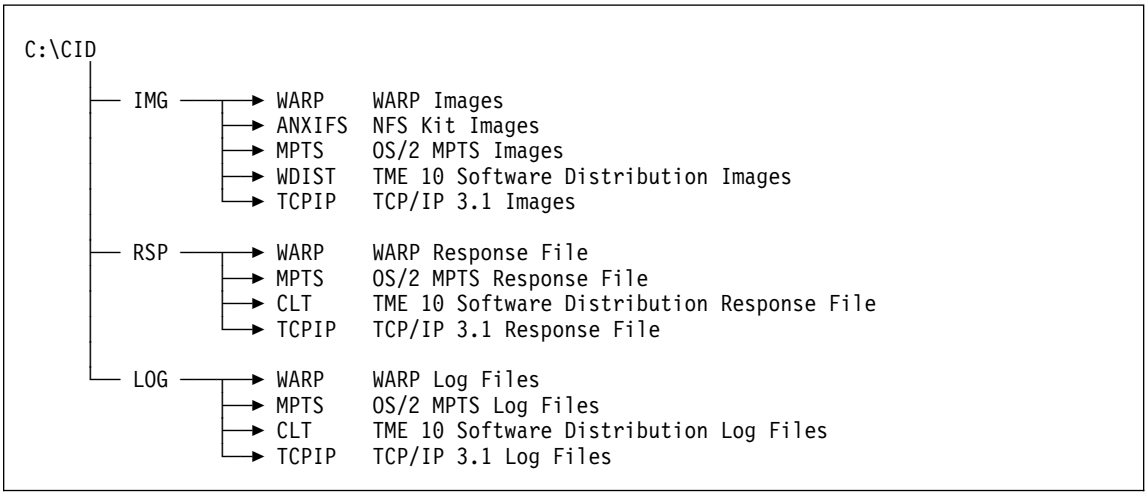


Figure 12. ANXIFS server directory structure

Copying OS/2 Warp Server

CID Utilities to the ANXIFS Server

You need the following OS/2 Warp Server CID utilities installed on the ANXIFS server (IFS01) to prepare for OS/2 Warp Server installation:

- SEIMAGE.EXE
- SEDISK.EXE
- SEMAINT.EXE
- SEINST.EXE
- RSPINST.EXE

These utilities are not installed as part of a normal OS/2 Warp Server installation, so you must install them specifically.

Installing OS/2 Warp Server CID Utilities

Some OS/2 Warp Server utilities are located in the OS/2 Warp Server package, while others are obtained from the ServicePak. Perform the following steps to install them at your ANXIFS server:

1. Insert diskette 7 of OS/2 Warp Server in drive A: or insert the OS/2 Warp Server CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive.

   Note: In the examples that follow, F: is used as the CD-ROM drive; if this does not apply to your system, change the drive specification when you issue the command.

2. For the product diskette, enter the following command to unpack the CID utilities:

   ```
   UNPACK A:\CID C:\CID\IMG\WARP

   UNPACK A:\REQUIRED C:\CID\IMG\WARP
   ```

3. For the product CD-ROM, enter the following command to unpack the CID utilities:

   ```
   UNPACK F:\OS2IMAGE\DISK_7\CID C:\CID\IMG\WARP

   UNPACK F:\OS2IMAGE\DISK_7\REQUIRED C:\CID\IMG\WARP
   ```

The CID utilities can only be unpacked using the OS/2 Warp Server UNPACK.EXE program.

Step 2: Preparing Product Images on the ANXIFS Server

1. Use the SEIMAGE utility to create OS/2 Warp Server installation diskette images. This copies the OS/2 Warp Server diskette content into the `IMG\WARP` subdirectory.

   Place the OS/2 installation diskette in drive A: and enter the following command:

   ```
   C:\CID\IMG\WARP\SEIMAGE /S:A: /T:C:\CID\IMG\WARP
   ```

   If you are using the product CD-ROM, place it in the CD-ROM drive and enter the following command:

   ```
   XCOPY F:\OS2IMAGE\*.* C:\CID\IMG\WARP /S
   ```

   The utility creates the directory structure shown in Figure 13 on page 21.

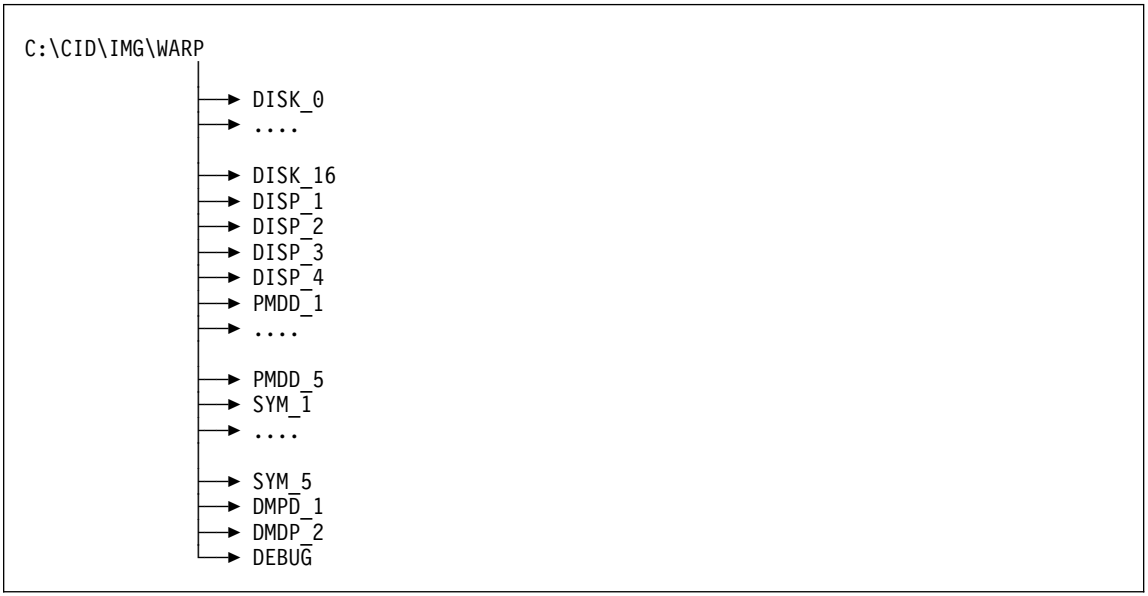


Figure 13. Subdirectories Created for OS/2 WARP server

2. Use the LAPSDISK.EXE utility program provided by MPTS to create the MPTS install image.

   To create the MPTS image using the product diskette, insert the LAPS diskette into the A: drive and enter the following command:

   ```
   A:\LAPSDISK A: C:\CID\IMG\MPTS
   ```

   To create the MPTS image using the product CD-ROM, insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive and enter the following command:

   ```
   F:\CID\SERVER\MPTS\LAPSDISK F:\CID\SERVER\MPTS C:\CID\IMG\MPTS
   ```

3. Copy the `ANXIFS.ZIP` file from the F:\SD4OS2\PRISTINE subdirectory into the directory `C:\CID\IMG` by entering the following command:

   ```
   COPY F:\SD4OS2\PRISTINE\ANXIFS.ZIP C:\CID\IMG
   ```

   and from the `C:\CID\IMG` prompt enter the following command:

   ```
   PKUNZIP2 -d ANXIFS.ZIP
   ```

4. Copy the TME 10 Software Distribution image package from the CD-ROM into the directory `C:\CID\IMG` by entering the following command:

   ```
   XCOPY F:\SD4OS2\IMAGES\*.* C:\CID\IMG\SWDIST\*.* /S /V /E
   ```

5. Copy the TCP/IP image package from the Warp Server CD-ROM.

6. Copy the NFS image package (the files in NFS1.ZIP and NFSCID1.ZIP) from the NFS kit image diskettes into the same directory where you copied the TCP/IP images.

Step 3: Preparing the Startup Diskettes at the ANXIFS Server

This step explains how to prepare startup diskettes that can be used to install OS/2 Warp Server on any pristine workstation.

1. Use the OS/2 Warp Server SEDISK utility to copy a minimal OS/2 Warp Server package to diskettes. Enter the following command:

   ```
   C:\CID\IMG\WARP\SEDISK /S:C:\CID\IMG\WARP /T:A:\
   ```

   You are prompted to insert a first and then a second diskette in your A: drive.

2. Leave the second startup diskette in the A: drive and from the C:\ prompt, enter the command:

   ```
   C:\CID\IMG\MPTS\THINLAPS  C:\CID\IMG\MPTS A: IBMTOK.NIF
   ```

3. Customize the `ANXCLT.INI` file located under `C:\CID\IMG\ANXIFS\CLIENT` to reflect your system requirements.

   Figure 14 is an example of `ANXCLT.INI` file.

```
; Adapter Number supported 0-1
adapter=0
; Max numbers of attach
numattaches=4
; Clientname is not mandatory if this key is not set a random name will
; be used
;clientname=ff
; Alias to be attached
; z is the disk letter
; ANXS01 is the ANXIFS server name
; REMAGT is the alias for the remote agent
; CODESRV is the alias for the CID directory where the images,
; response files, and log files are loaded.
attach=z,ANXS01,REMAGT
attach=x,ANXS01,CODESRV
```

Figure 14. Sample ANXCLT.INI file

4. Copy the files listed in Table 4 on page 23 to the startup diskette by entering the command:

   ```
   COPY <filename> A:
   ```

   where `<filename>` is the name of the file with its complete path.

Table 4. Files to Add to Startup Diskettes	
File Name	**File Location**
ANXCLT.INI	C:\CID\IMG\ANXIFS\CLIENT
ANXIFCOM.IFS	C:\CID\IMG\ANXIFS\CLIENT
ANXIFCOM.SYS	C:\CID\IMG\ANXIFS\CLIENT
ANXIFPID.SYS	C:\CID\IMG\ANXIFS\CLIENT
ANXREQ.EXE	C:\CID\IMG\ANXIFS\CLIENT
ANXIFS.MSG	C:\CID\IMG\ANXIFS\CLIENT
FNDVDSK.CMD	C:\CID\IMG\ANXIFS\CLIENT
INSTALL.CMD	C:\CID\IMG\ANXIFS\CLIENT
OSO001.MSG	C:\CID\IMG\ANXIFS\CLIENT
FDISK.DAT	Create as described in “Step 4: Preparing a Procedure to Partition the Hard Disk” on page 23.
PREPDSK.CMD	Create as described in “Step 4: Preparing a Procedure to Partition the Hard Disk” on page 23.
CMD.EXE	Disk_1 (if it is not on the second diskette)
FDISK.COM	Disk_1
FORMAT.COM	Disk_2
VDISK.SYS	C:\OS2\BOOT
Note: The `VDISK.SYS` file must be retrieved from the same OS/2 version used to create the startup diskettes.	

5. Edit the CONFIG.SYS file located on the second startup diskette (under the root directory) by adding a period (.) as the first value in the PATH and DPATH statements and modifying the following:

   ```
   SET OS2_SHELL=CMD.EXE /K FNDVDSK.CMD
   ```

   Also add the following statements:

   ```
   DEVICE=\ANXIFPID.SYS
   DEVICE=\ANXIFCOM.SYS
   DEVICE=\VDISK.SYS 700,,
   IFS:\ANXIFCOM.IFS
   CALL=ANXREQ.EXE start
   ```

Step 4: Preparing a Procedure to Partition the Hard Disk

You can create a .CMD file to partition the hard disk on a pristine workstation. The file contains instructions for partitioning the disk and formatting the drives that are created. The following file, PREPDSK.CMD, is a sample procedure. As an alternative method, you can use the FDISK command stored on the second startup diskette.

```
@echo off
cls
REM PREPDSK.CMD....
REM
echo Partitioning the disk...
FDISK /file:FDISK.DAT
```

In the above sample file, PREPDSK.CMD is invoked to partition the hard disk. The FDISK command used:

```
FDISK /file:FDISK.DAT
```

calls the FDISK.DAT file, which contains the following instructions:

```
/delete:all,/disk:1
/create,/size:100,/vtype:1
/create,/size:200,/vtype:2
```

Where:

/delete Deletes all partitions on a physical disk. In the `/disk:n` specification, `n` represents the disk number.

/create Creates a partition. If you use a Boot Manager, you can also specify a startup name (`/create:name`).

/size:nnn Specifies the size of the partition in megabytes.

/vtype:X Specifies the partition type. `X` can have any of the following values:

- **0=** Unusable
- **1=** Primary
- **2=** Logical
- **3=** Primary or logical

This sample procedure deletes all partitions and creates two new ones, a primary one of 100 MB and a logical one of 200 MB.

An alternative to this method is to enter the FDISK command stored on the second startup diskette. Insert the diskette into the A:\ prompt and enter:

```
A:\FDISK
```

The hard disk is partitioned. This is an attended method; at the command completion you are requested to restart the workstation.Insert the first startup diskette into the drive and press the Ctrl+Alt+Del keys to restart the system.

Step 5: Preparing Response Files on the ANXIFS Server

You must create four response files in the shared directory, `C:\CID\RSP`:

WARP\OS2.RSP Response file for SEINST.EXE

MPTS\MPTS.RSP	Response file for MPTS product installation
CLT\CLIENT.RSP	Response file for INSTALL.EXE (TME 10 Software Distribution for OS/2 client installation)
TCPIP\TCPIP.RSP	Response file for TCP/IP 3.1

Examples of these four response files are provided below.

OS/2 Response File

This response file can be created by changing two lines in the sample response file, `SAMPLE.RSP`, provided with OS/2. To format the partition where the OS/2 operating system is to be installed, change the following parameters to read:

```
ExitOnError=1
FormatPartition=1
```

If the target installation drive is not C:, add the parameter:

```
TargetDrive:
```

to specify the drive to be used.

Samples of response files are provided in the SAMPLES directory. Copy the files into the directory `C:` by entering the command:

```
COPY F:\SD4OS2\SAMPLES\*.RSP C:\IMG\RSP
```

Example of an MPTS Response File

```
INST_SECTION = (
  INSTALL = product
  UPGRADE_LEVEL = new
  )

PROTOCOL = (
[PROT_MAN]

   DRIVERNAME = PROTMAN$

[IBMLXCFG]

   IBMTOK_nif = IBMTOK.nif
   TCPIP_nif = TCPIP.nif

[TCPIP_nif]

   DriverName = TCPIP$
   Bindings = IBMTOK_nif

[IBMTOK_nif]

   DriverName = IBMTOK$
   ADAPTER = "PRIMARY"
   MAXTRANSMITS = 6
   RECVBUFS = 2
   RECVBUFSIZE = 256
   XMITBUFS = 1

  )
```

Figure 15. Example of an MPTS Response File.

Example of a TCP/IP Response File

```
// Default response file for PRODUCT DISK install
INSTALL_WPS=Y
IPADDR=9.87.233.151
NETMASK=255.255.248.0
ROUTE=9.87.232.254
HOSTNAME=think06
DNS_DOMAIN=austin.ibm.com
NAMESERVER=9.87.238.5
NAMESERVER=9.87.238.46
CONFIGURE_TCP=Y
CONFIGURE=Y
ATTENDED=N
TARGET_PATH=D:\tcpip30

INSTALL_TITLE = IBM TCP/IP Version 3.1 for OS/2

INSTALL_NAME = BASE 9.60 1 4 "Client Kit" Base TCP/IP Applications
INSTALL_NAME = INET 3.88 5 6 "Client Kit" Feature TCP/IP ►
applications: WE/2, NR/2, Gopher, and Internet Dial
INSTALL_NAME = DBOX  1.75 7 7 "Client Kit" DOS\Windows Access
INSTALL_NAME = UMAIL 4.57 7 8 "Client Kit" UltiMail Lite

INSTALL_NAME = NFS  1.10 1 1 "Network File System Kit"  NFS Kit
INSTALL_NAME = NFSCID 0.25 1 1 "Network File System Kit"  NFS TCPIP CID Install

EXEC = BASE call clntxt
EXEC = BASE call tcpcoex
EXEC = DBOX call dboxxt
EXEC = UMAIL call umlitext
```

Figure 16. Example of a TCP/IP Response File

Example of a TME 10 Software Distribution Client Response File

```
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;;                                                                            ;;
;;             Software Distribution for OS/2 Response File                   ;;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;

; Target path
FILE = d:\SOFTDIST

; Work area
; It is the path for the data directory
WORK =c:\

; Software Distribution components to install
COMP = Distribution Client

DELETEBACKUP = No
SAVEBACKUP   = Yes
CFGUPDATE    = Auto
OVERWRITE    = Yes

; Software Distribution System Name. This identifies the system in the network
; mandatory
SystemName   = think06

; Network drivers and Network addresses
; You may specify five types of driver keywords. The value used is 1 or 0.
; Parm1 keyword is required for NETBIOS Driver.
; mandatory
Driver.TCPIP = 1

; Distribution directories
;BackupArea  = d:\softdist\BACKUP
;ServiceArea = d:\softdist\SERVICE
;Repository  = d:\softdist\REPOS
;WorkArea    = d:\softdist\WORK

; Software Distribution Server Connection

; Distribution Server's System Name
ServerName = pinto

; Network driver and Distribution Server's address (TCP/IP for TCP/IP,
; NB for NETBIOS, TLI for IPX)
ServerDriver = TCP/IP

ServerAddress = client6

TCP.Hostname = think06
TargetAddress = think06
```

Figure 17. Example of an OS/2 Client Response File

Step 6: Customize The ANXSRV.INI File

Customize the ANXSRV.INI file located under the C:\CID\IMG\ANXIFS\SERVER directory. Following is a sample of the ANXSRV.INI. file.

```
Adapter=0;
Numclients=20
Servername=ANXS01
; REMAGT is the alias for the remote agent,
; d:\ is the drive where
; the software distribution client is installed,
; if you have installed the client in the d:\SOFTDIST\BIN
; subdirectory.
Alias=rw,single,REMAGT,d:\CID
; CODESRV is the alias for the CID directory,
; e:\cid is the directory where
; the images, response files, and log files are stored
Alias=rw,single,CODESRV,e:\cid
```

Figure 18. Example of an ANXSRV.INI file

Step 7: Preparing Software Object Profiles at the TME 10 Software Distribution Server

At the TME 10 Software Distribution server (SERV01), prepare the following software object profiles:

- warp.pro
- mpts.pro
- client.pro
- anxifs.pro
- tcpip.pro

The software object profiles are used in the next step to build software objects at the TME 10 Software Distribution server. The files are then used to install OS/2 Warp Server on the TME 10 Software Distribution client. Samples of these software object profiles are provided on the CD-ROM under SD4OS2\SAMPLES. file.

Examples of the software object profiles required follow.

Warp Software Object Profile

```
GLOBAL NAME:            IBM.OS2V30.WARP.REF.1
DESCRIPTION:            IBM OS/2 3.0 Pristine
LOCAL NAME:             $(REPOSITORY)\OS2.CHG
CHANGE FILE TYPE:       OS2CID


    INSTALL PROGRAM:

    PROGRAM NAME:       x:\img\warp\seinst.exe
    PARAMETERS:         /S:x:\img\warp /T:a:\ /B:c: ►
                        /R:x:\rsp\warp\os2.rsp ►
                        /L1:x:\log\warp\os2.l1
```

Figure 19. Example of a WARP software object profile

Note: If the target installation drive is not C:, change the drive specification in the `/B:` parameter.

MPTS Software Object Profile

```
GLOBAL NAME:            IBM.MPTSV20.REF.1
DESCRIPTION:            IBM MPTS
LOCAL NAME:             $(REPOSITORY)\mpts.chg
CHANGE FILE TYPE:       OS2CID



INSTALL PROGRAM:
PROGRAM NAME:   x:\img\mpts\mpts.EXE
PARAMETERS:     /E:MAINT /S:x:\img\mpts /T:c:\ /TU:C:\ ►
                /R:x:\rsp\mpts\mpts.rsp ►
                /L1:x:\log\mpts\laps.l1
```

Figure 20. Example of an MPTS software object profile

Note: If the target installation drive is not C:, change the drive specification in the `/T:` and `/TU:` and parameters.

ANXIFS Client Software Object Profile

```
GLOBAL NAME:            IBM.ANXIFS.REF.1
DESCRIPTION:            IBM anxifs client
LOCAL NAME:             $(REPOSITORY)\anxifs.chg
CHANGE FILE TYPE:       OS2CID

    INSTALL PROGRAM:
        PROGRAM NAME:   x:\img\anxifs\client\anxifs.cmd
        PARAMETERS:     x: c: z:
```

Figure 21. Example of an ANXIFS software object profile

TME 10 Software Distribution Client Software Object Profile

```
GLOBAL NAME:        IBM.DIST.CLT31.REF.1
DESCRIPTION:        Software Distribution for OS/2 Client
LOCAL NAME:         $(REPOSITORY)\clt.chg
CHANGE FILE TYPE:   OS2CID
POSTREQ COMMAND:    $(TARGETDIR)\bin\fndend.cmd
INSTALL PROGRAM:
    PROGRAM NAME:    x:\img\clt\INSTALL.EXE
    PARAMETERS:      /S:x:\img\clt /R:x:\rsp\clt\client.RSP ►
                     /A:I /L1:x:\log\clt\LOG1.TXT ►
                     /L2:x:\log\clt\LOG2.TXT /X /T:$(TARGETDIR)
```

Figure 22. Example of a TME 10 Software Distribution client software object profile

TCP/IP Software Object Profile

```
GLOBAL NAME:            IBM.TCPIPV31.REF.1.0
DESCRIPTION:            Configuration for TCPIP V 3.1
CHANGE FILE TYPE:       OS2CID

INSTALL PROGRAM:
    PROGRAM NAME:       x:\img\tcpip\install.exe
    PARAMETERS:         /S:x:\img\tcpip /B:C: /R:x:\img\rsp\tcpip\tcp.rsp
 /L1:
```

Figure 23. Example of a TCP/IP software object Profile

Step 8: Building Software Objects at the TME 10 Software Distribution Server

1. Use the software object profiles prepared in the previous step to build software objects. Enter the following commands:

   ```
   nvdm bld warp.pro
   nvdm bld mpts.pro
   nvdm bld client.pro
   nvdm bld anxifs.pro
   nvdm bld tcpip.pro
   ```

2. After these commands are executed, the software objects are built, and cataloged at the TME 10 Software Distribution server with the name specified in the respective software object profiles.

This step does not need to be executed every time you install a pristine workstation, because the software objects are not workstation-specific.

Step 9: Starting Up TME 10 Software Distribution for OS/2 and ANXIFS

At the TME 10 Software Distribution server (SERV01), start TME 10 Software Distribution for OS/2 by entering the following command at the `C:` prompt:

```
NVDM start
```

Specify the target directory for TME 10 Software Distribution, and specify that the TARGETDIR shared token is to be used to install TME 10 Software Distribution, by entering the command:

```
NVDM addpm -a -i TARGETDIR=D:\SOFTDIST
```

Define the TME 10 Software Distribution client to the TME 10 Software Distribution server, by entering the folllowing command:

```
NVDM addtg -s <short name> -a <address> -y OS/2 -tp NetBIOS -ld
```

Note that, in this example, each client installed using this scenario will have TME 10 Software Distribution installed in the directory D:\SOFTDIST.

Switch to the ANXIFS server workstation (IFS01) and start ANXIFS. From the `C:\CID\IMG\ANXIFS\SERVER\` prompt, enter the command:

```
APISERV ANXSRV.INI
```

Step 10: Submitting the Install Requests

At the TME 10 Software Distribution server, submit the install requests for the workstation PS2CLI1 by entering the commands:

```
NVDM inst IBM.OS2V30.WARP.REF.1 IBM.MPTSV20.REF.1 ►
          IBM.ANXIFS.REF.1 -N -W think06

NVDM inst IBM.TCPIPV31.REF.1 ►
          IBM.DIST.CLT31.REF.1 -N -W think06
```

Step 11: Starting Up the TME 10 Software Distribution Client

At the pristine workstation:

1. Insert the first startup diskette into drive A:.
2. Turn the power on.
3. When prompted, insert the second startup diskette into drive A:. The startup continues and at the end a prompt is displayed on the screen. Enter the following command, which partitions the hard disk according to the instructions found in the FDISK.DAT file.

   ```
   prepdsk
   ```

   The execution of this command requires five to ten minutes.

   At command completion, you are requested to restart the workstation. Insert the first startup diskette into drive `A:` and press the Ctrl+Alt+Del keys to restart the system.
4. When prompted, insert the second startup diskette into the drive. At the end of startup, a prompt is displayed.
5. Enter the command:

   ```
   install <client_name> <client_address> <sd_server> <srv_address>
   ```

   Where:

   <**client_name**> Is the unique name by which the client is known in the domain. It can be up to 32 characters long. For example, `think06`.

   <**client_address**> Is the address of the client. It can be the last eight characters of the adapter address or a unique name within the domain. It can be up to 8 characters long. For example, `think06`.

   <**sd_server**> Is the name of the TME 10 Software Distribution server to which the pristine workstation is defined as a client.

   <**srv_address**> Is the address of the server. It can be the last eight characters of the adapter address or a unique name within the domain. It can be up to 8 characters long. For example, `pinto`.

   Do not turn the workstation off. Unattended installation of OS/2 Warp now begins. It may take up to two hours for the installation process to complete.

Chapter 3. OS/2 Warp 3.0.1 TCP/IP Pristine Installation Scenario

This chapter describes a scenario where the OS/2 Warp operating system, Multi-Protocol Transport Services (MPTS), IBM TCP/IP, the Network File Services (NFS) kit, and the TME 10 Software Distribution for OS/2 client are installed from OS/2 Warp on a *pristine workstation* (a workstation that has no software installed). After completion of the scenario, the TME 10 Software Distribution client communicates with its server over TCP/IP.

You will find the sample response files, profiles, and other samples for this scenario on the TME 10 Software Distribution CD-ROM under SD4OS2\SAMPLES\PRISTINE\TCPIP subdirectory.

Environment

The environment used in this scenario is a stand-alone TCP/IP network composed of:

- An TME 10 Software Distribution for OS/2 server (SERV01)
- A remote TME 10 Software Distribution client that is installed under the D:\softdist directory on the TME 10 Software Distribution for OS/2 server
- An NFS server (NFS01).

  These three components are installed in the same machine.

  In this scenario we assume that these three component of these environment are distinct.
- A pristine workstation (PS2CLI)

Figure 24 shows the environment.

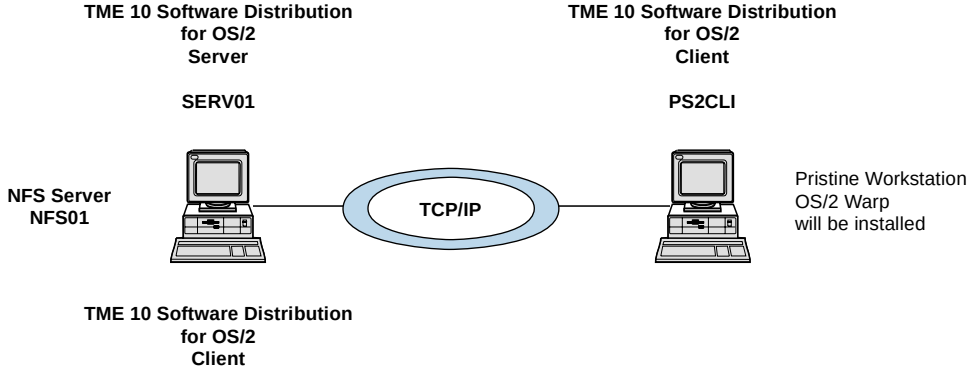


Figure 24. Pristine Workstation OS/2 WARP connect server installation scenario environment

Prerequisites

For this scenario it is assumed that:

- TME 10 Software Distribution for OS/2 is installed on the TME 10 Software Distribution server SERV01.
- The TME 10 Software Distribution client must be installed in the SOFTDIST directory, on the NFS server NFS01. The NFS server must be installed on the same workstation as the TME 10 Software Distribution for OS/2 server.

  To install the client use the REMAGENT.RSP response file stored in the directory SD4OS2\SAMPLES.

  Enter the following command:

  ```
  INSTALL \R:SD4OS2/SAMPLES/REMAGENT.RSP
  ```

  Use the REMAGENT.RSP response file to install the agent code without updating the config.sys file, the startup folder, and the server configuration file.

  Use the REMAGENT.RSP response file to install the TME 10 Software Distribution for OS/2 agent on the same workstation where the TME 10 Software Distribution for OS/2 server is running.
- The workstation where TME 10 Software Distribution for OS/2 client will be installed must be a pristine workstation.
- CD-ROMs or installation diskettes are available for:
  - OS/2 Warp Server or Warp Connect
  - Multi-Protocol Transport Services (MPTS) WR08200
  - TCP/IP 3.1
  - Network File Services (NFS) kit and UN57064 CSD
  - TME 10 Software Distribution for OS/2 client
- Three blank diskettes are available for the OS/2 Warp Server you are installing.
- The NFS server has a CD-ROM drive. In this scenario, the CD-ROM drive is referred to as the F: drive.
- The NFS server has a minimum of 100 MB of free disk space.
- The pristine workstation has a minimum of 12 MB of RAM.
- The pristine workstation uses drive Z: to attach the TME 10 Software Distribution for OS/2 client NFS01, and drive X: to attach the directory where the images are stored on the NFS server NFS01.

Objectives

This scenario installs the OS/2 Warp operating system, MPTS, TCP/IP, the NFS kit, and the TME 10 Software Distribution for OS/2 client on a pristine workstation attached to a token-ring network.

1. OS/2 CID utilities are copied to the NFS server.
2. The following images are prepared on the NFS server:

- OS/2 Warp Server or OS/2 Warp Connect
- Multi-Protocol Transport Services (MPTS)
- TME 10 Software Distribution for OS/2 client
- Network File Services (NFS)
- TCP/IP 3.1

3. The startup diskettes required to start the pristine workstation are prepared at the NFS server.

   The startup diskettes prepared for installing OS/2 Warp Server or OS/2 Warp Connect must be created using the same version of OS/2 you want to install.

4. Response files to install OS/2 Warp, MPTS, NFS, TCP/IP, and the TME 10 Software Distribution for OS/2 client on the pristine workstation are prepared at the NFS server (in this scenario, the same workstation as the TME 10 Software Distribution for OS/2 server).

5. Software object profiles and the software objects required to install OS/2 Warp Server or Warp Connect, MPTS, TCP/IP with the NFS kit, and the TME 10 Software Distribution for OS/2 client are prepared at the NFS server (in this scenario, the same workstation as the TME 10 Software Distribution server).

6. Two installation requests are submitted from the TME 10 Software Distribution for OS/2 client.

7. The pristine workstation is started from the three startup diskettes.

Step 1: Preparing the NFS Server Environment

Create a CID directory structure on the NFS server that includes the following subdirectories:

IMG Stores the images of the software to be installed on the client.

RSP Stores the response files needed during installation.

LOG Stores log files written by the installation program.

A diagram of the directory structure you must create is shown in Figure 25 on page 38.

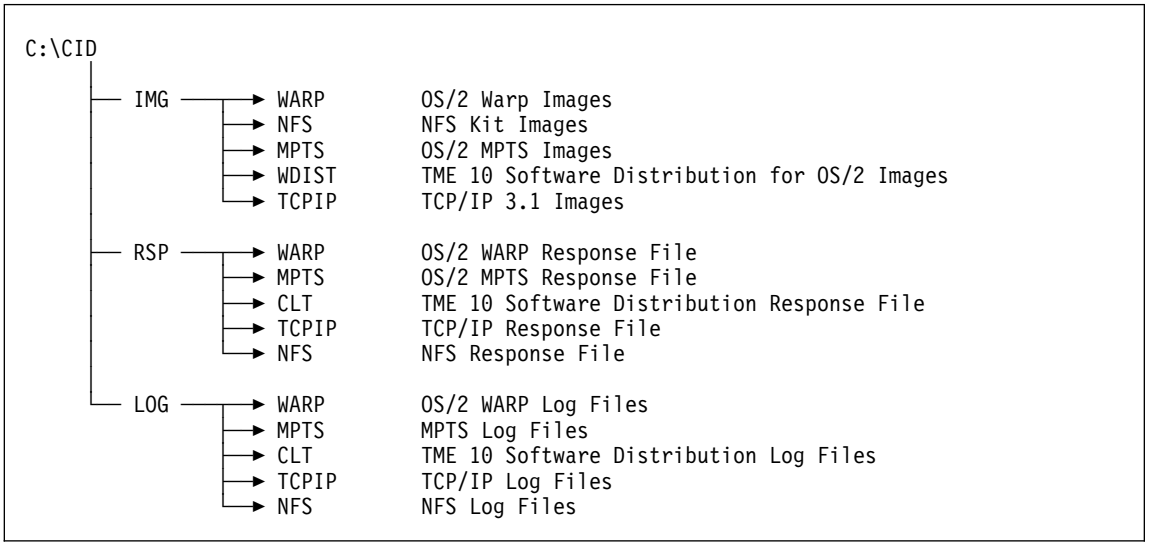


Figure 25. NFS server directory structure

Copying OS/2 Warp CID Utilities to the NFS Server

You must install the following OS/2 Warp Server or Warp Connect CID utilities on the NFS server (NFS01) to prepare for OS/2 Warp installation:

- SEIMAGE.EXE
- SEDISK.EXE
- SEMAINT.EXE
- SEINST.EXE
- RSPINST.EXE

These utilities are not installed as part of a normal OS/2 Warp installation, so you must install them specifically.

Installing OS/2 Warp CID Utilities

Some OS/2 Warp utilities are located in the OS/2 Warp Server or Warp Connect packages, while others are obtained from the ServicePak. Perform the following steps to install them at your NFS server:

1. Insert diskette 7 of OS/2 Warp Server or Warp Connect in drive A: or insert the OS/2 Warp Server or Warp Connect CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive.

   Note: In the examples that follow, F: is used as the CD-ROM drive; if this does not apply to your system, change the drive specification when you issue the command.

2. For the product diskette, enter the following command to unpack the CID utilities:

   ```
   UNPACK A:\CID C:\CID\IMG\WARP

   UNPACK A:\REQUIRED C:\CID\IMG\WARP
   ```

3. For the product CD-ROM, enter the following command to unpack the CID utilities:

   ```
   UNPACK F:\OS2IMAGE\DISK_7\CID C:\CID\IMG\WARP

   UNPACK F:\OS2IMAGE\DISK_7\REQUIRED C:\CID\IMG\WARP
   ```

The CID utilities can only be unpacked using the OS/2 Warp Server or Warp Connect UNPACK.EXE program.

Step 2: Preparing Product Images on the NFS Server

1. Use the SEIMAGE utility to create OS/2 Warp Server or Warp Connect installation diskette images. This copies the OS/2 Warp Server or Warp Connect diskette content into the `IMG\WARP` subdirectory.

   Place the OS/2 installation diskette in drive A: and enter the following command:

   ```
   C:\CID\IMG\WARP\SEIMAGE /S:A: /T:C:\CID\IMG\WARP
   ```

   If you are using the product CD-ROM, place it in the CD-ROM drive and enter the following command:

   ```
   XCOPY F:\OS2IMAGE\*.* C:\CID\IMG\WARP /S
   ```

   The utility creates the directory structure shown in Figure 26.

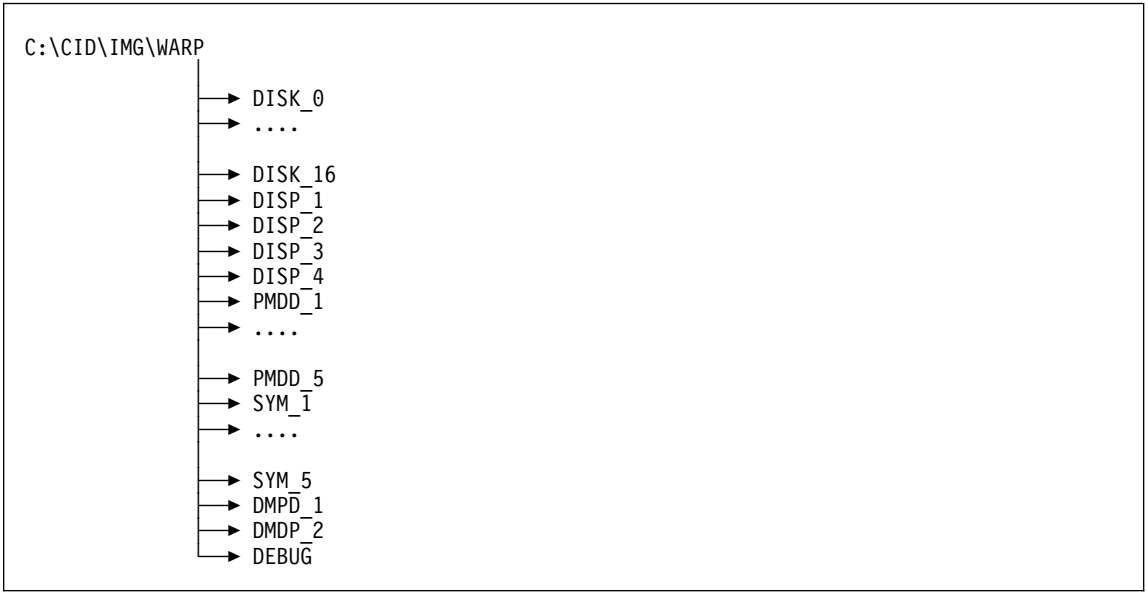


Figure 26. Subdirectories created for OS/2 WARP server or WARP connect

2. Copy the TME 10 Software Distribution for OS/2 image package from the CD-ROM into the directory `C:\CID\IMG` by entering the following command:

   ```
   XCOPY F:\SD4OS2\IMAGES\*.* C:\CID\IMG\SWDIST\*.* /S /V /E
   ```

3. Use the LAPSDISK.EXE utility program provided by MPTS to create the MPTS install image.

   To create the MPTS image using the product diskettes, insert the MPTS diskette into the A: drive and enter the following command:

   ```
   A:\LAPSDISK A: C:\CID\IMG\MPTS
   ```

   To create the MPTS image using the product CD-ROM, insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive and enter the following command:

   ```
   F:\CID\SERVER\MPTS\LAPSDISK F:\CID\SERVER\MPTS C:\CID\IMG\MPTS
   ```

   After you use the previous commands to create the MPTS image, enter the following command to copy that image:

   ```
   COPY C:\CID\IMG\SWDIST\PRISTINE\TCPIP\MPTSFIX.CMD C:\CID\IMG\MPTS
   ```

4. Copy the TCP/IP image package from the Warp Server or Warp Connect CD-ROM by entering the following command:

   ```
   XCOPY F:\CID\SERVER\TCPAPPS\*.* C:\CID\IMG\TCPIP\*.* /S /V /E
   ```

5. To create the NFS image package from the NFS kit image diskettes insert, the NFS diskette in drive A: and enter the following command:

   ```
   XCOPY A:*.* C:\CID\IMG\NFS\*.*  /S /E /V
   ```

6. To update the NFS kit, copy the NFS CSD UN57064 package from the NFS image diskette, insert the NFS CSD image diskette in the Drive A: and enter the following command:

   ```
   XCOPY A:*.* C:\CID\IMG\NFS\*.*  /S /E /V
   ```

   Than enter the following command:

   ```
   COPY C:\CID\IMG\SWDIST\PRISTINE\TCPIP\FNDNFS.CMD C:\CID\IMG\NFS\
   ```

   The FNDNFS.CMD file is invoked by the TME 10 Software Distribution for OS/2 agent to create a batch procedure on the PS2CLI workstation file, to run the remote agent from the pristine workstation after the first reboot.

7. Add the C:\CID and D:\ directories to the NFS server export list and start the NFSD service.

Step 3: Preparing the Startup Diskettes at the NFS Server

This step explains how to prepare startup diskettes that can be used to install OS/2 Warp on any pristine workstation.

1. Use the OS/2 Warp Server or Warp Connect SEDISK utility to copy a minimal OS/2 Warp Server or Warp Connect package to diskettes. Enter the following command:

   ```
   C:\CID\IMG\WARP\SEDISK /S:C:\CID\IMG\WARP /T:A:\
   ```

   You are prompted to insert a first and then a second diskette in your A: drive.

2. Leave the second startup diskette in the A: drive and from the C:\ prompt, enter the following commands:

```
ERASE A:\UNPACK.EXE

ERASE A:\UNPACK2.EXE
```

3. Insert the first startup diskette in the A: drive and enter:

   ```
   C:\CID\IMG\SWDIST\TOOL\CREADSK.CMD C:\CID\IMG\ C:\CID\IMG A:
   ```

   Use the CREADSK.CMD procedure to install the TCP/IP transport layer because the Thinklaps installation utility does not install it.

4. Copy the files listed in Table 5 to the first startup diskette by entering the command:

   ```
   COPY <filename> A:
   ```

   where `<filename>` is the name of the file with its complete path.

Table 5. Files to Add to the First Startup Diskettes

File Name	File Location
A:\mptm\etc\RESOLV	C:\CID\IMG\SWDIST\PRISTINE\TCPIP
FDISK.DAT	Create as described in "Step 4: Preparing a Procedure to Partition the Hard Disk" on page 42.
PREPDSK.CMD	Create as described in "Step 4: Preparing a Procedure to Partition the Hard Disk" on page 42.
FDISK.COM	Disk_1
FORMAT.COM	Disk_2
VDISK.SYS	C:\OS2\BOOT

Note: The `VDISK.SYS` file must be retrieved from the same OS/2 version used to create the startup diskettes.

5. Edit the CONFIG.SYS file located on the second startup diskette, under the root directory by adding a period and a semicolon (. ;) as the first value in the PATH and DPATH statements and by modifying the following:

   ```
   SET OS2_SHELL=CMD.EXE /K FNDVDSK.CMD
   DISKCASHE= 64,LW
   ```

   Add the Z:\DLL path to the LIBPATH, PATH, and DPATH statements in the config.sys file. Z: is the remote code drive.

6. Edit the FNDTRP.CMD file to customize the following environment variables:

   ```
   set imagepath= [imagepath]
   set imagecode= [imagecode]
   set netmask=   [netmask]
   set router=    [route]
   ```

   [imagepath] It is the shared nfs directory where the images are stored. For example c:\CID

   [imagecode] It is the shared nfs directory where the TME 10 Software Distribution for OS/2 Agent is stored For example D:\

[netmask] It is your TCP/IP netmask For example 255.255.248.0

[route] It is the address of your default router For example 9.87.231.26

7. Customize the resolv file in the A:\mptn\etc directory on the first diskette, by adding the following statements:

```
DSN domain name value
DSN name server address
```

Step 4: Preparing a Procedure to Partition the Hard Disk

You can create a .CMD file to partition the hard disk on a pristine workstation. The file contains instructions for partitioning the disk and formatting the drives that are created.

The PREPDSK.CMD File

The following file, PREPDSK.CMD, is a sample procedure.

```
@echo off
cls
REM PREPDSK.CMD....
REM
echo Partitioning the disk...
FDISK /file:FDISK.DAT
```

In the above sample file, PREPDSK.CMD is invoked to partition the hard disk. The FDISK command:

```
FDISK /file:FDISK.DAT
```

calls the FDISK.DAT file, which contains the following instructions:

```
/delete:all,/disk:1
/create,/size:100,/vtype:1
/create,/size:200,/vtype:2
```

Where:

/delete Deletes all partitions on a physical disk. In the `/disk:n` specification, `n` represents the disk number.

/create Creates a partition. If you use a Boot Manager, you can also specify a startup name (`/create:name`).

/size:nnn Specifies the size of the partition in megabytes.

/vtype:X Specifies the partition type. `X` can have any of the following values:

- **0=** Unusable
- **1=** Primary
- **2=** Logical
- **3=** Primary or logical

This sample procedure deletes all partitions and creates two new ones, a primary one of 100 MB and a logical one of 200 MB.

The FDISK Command

An alternative to this method is to enter the FDISK command stored on the second startup diskette. Insert the diskette into the A:\ prompt and enter:

```
A:\FDISK
```

The hard disk is partitioned. This is an attended method; at the command completion you are requested to restart the workstation. Insert the first startup diskette into the drive and press the Ctrl+Alt+Del keys to restart the system.

Step 5: Preparing Response Files on the NFS Server

You must create five response files in the shared directory, `C:\CID\RSP`:

WARP\OS2.RSP	Response file for SEINST.EXE
MPTS\MPTS.RSP	Response file for MPTS product installation
CLT\CLIENT.RSP	Response file for INSTALL.EXE (TME 10 Software Distribution for OS/2 client installation)
TCPIP\TCPIP.RSP	Response file for TCP/IP 3.1
NFS\NFS.RSP	Response file for NFS 2.0.1

Examples of these five response files are provided below.

Example of an OS/2 Response File

This response file can be created by changing two lines in the sample response file, `SAMPLE.RSP`, provided with OS/2. To format the partition where the OS/2 operating system is to be installed, change the following parameters to read:

```
ExitOnError=1
FormatPartition=1
```

If the target installation drive is not C:, add the parameter:

```
TargetDrive:
```

to specify the drive to be used.

Samples of response files are provided in the SAMPLES directory. Copy the files into the directory `C:` by entering the command:

```
COPY F:\SD4OS2\SAMPLES\*.RSP C:\IMG\RSP
```

Example of an MPTS Response File

```
INST_SECTION = (
  UPGRADE_LEVEL =NEW
  INSTALL = PRODUCT
  )

PROTOCOL = (
[PROT_MAN]

   DriverName = PROTMAN$

[IBMLXCFG]

   LANDD_nif = LANDD.NIF
   TCPIP_nif = TCPIP.nif
   IBMTOK_nif = IBMTOK.nif

[LANDD_nif]

   DriverName = LANDD$
   Bindings = IBMTOK_nif
   ETHERAND_TYPE = "I"
   SYSTEM_KEY = 0x0
   OPEN_OPTIONS = 0x2000
   TRACE = 0x0
   LINKS = 8
   MAX_SAPS = 3
   MAX_G_SAPS = 0
   USERS = 3
   TI_TICK_G1 = 255
   T1_TICK_G1 = 15
   T2_TICK_G1 = 3
   TI_TICK_G2 = 255
   T1_TICK_G2 = 25
   T2_TICK_G2 = 10
   IPACKETS = 250
   UIPACKETS = 100
   MAXTRANSMITS = 6
   MINTRANSMITS = 2
   TCBS = 64
   GDTS = 30
   ELEMENTS = 800

[TCPIP_nif]
```

Figure 27 (Part 1 of 2). Example of an MPTS Response File.

```
   DriverName = TCPIP$
   Bindings = IBMTOK_nif

[IBMTOK_nif]

   DriverName = IBMTOK$
   ADAPTER = PRIMARY
   MAXTRANSMITS = 12
   RECVBUFS = 3
   RECVBUFSIZE = 512
   XMITBUFS = 1

  )

MPTS = (
  [CONTROL]
      Local_IPC  = YES
      INET_Access  = YES
      NETBIOS_Access  = YES
  [IFCONFIG]
      Interface    = 0
      Address      = $(IPADDRESS)
      Brdcast      =
      Dest         =
      Enable       = UP
      Netmask      = $(NETMASK)
      Metric       =
      Mtu          = 1500
  [ROUTE]
      Type         = default
      Action       = add
      Dest         =
      Router       = $(ROUTER)
      Metric       = 1
      )

RESOLV = (
      NAME = domain       $(DNSDOMAIN)
      NAME = nameserver   $(DNSADDRESS1)
      NAME = nameserver   $(DNSADDRESS)
         )

HOSTNAME = (
      HOSTNAME = $(HOSTNAME)
         )
```

Figure 27 (Part 2 of 2). Example of an MPTS Response File.

Example of a TCP/IP Response File

```
// Default response file for PRODUCT DISK install
CONFIGURE_TCP=N
CONFIGURE=N
ATTENDED=N
TARGET_PATH=D:\tcpip30

INSTALL_TITLE = IBM TCP/IP Version 3.1 for OS/2

INSTALL_NAME = BASE 9.60 1 4 "Client Kit" Base TCP/IP Applications
INSTALL_NAME = INET 3.88 5 6 "Client Kit" Feature TCP/IP Applications: WE/2, NR/2, Gopher, and Internet Dial
INSTALL_NAME = DBOX  1.75 7 7 "Client Kit" DOS\Windows Access
INSTALL_NAME = UMAIL 4.57 7 8 "Client Kit" UltiMail Lite


EXEC = BASE call clntxt
EXEC = BASE call tcpcoex
EXEC = DBOX call dboxxt
EXEC = UMAIL call umlitext
```

Figure 28. Example of a TCP/IP Response File

Example of a NSF kit Response File

```
// Default response file for PRODUCT DISK install

INSTALL_NAME = NFS  1.10 1 1 "Network File System Kit"  NFS Kit
INSTALL_NAME = NFSCID 0.25 1 1 "Network File System Kit"  NFS TCPIP CID Install


EXEC = NFS call nfsxt BOOT_DRIVE TARGET_PATH
CONFIGURE = Y
CONFIGSYS = Y
INSTALL_LAPS = N
ATTENDED = N
```

Figure 29. Example of a NSF kit Response File

Example of a TME 10 Software Distribution for OS/2 Client Response File

```
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;;                                                                            ;;
;;             Software Distribution for OS/2 Response File                   ;;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;

; Target path
FILE = d:\SOFTDIST

; Work area
; It is the path for the data directory
WORK =c:\

; Software Distribution components to install
COMP = Distribution Client

DELETEBACKUP = No
SAVEBACKUP   = Yes
CFGUPDATE    = Auto
OVERWRITE    = Yes

; Software Distribution System Name. This identifies the system in the network
; mandatory
SystemName   = think06

; Network drivers and Network addresses
; You may specify five types of driver keywords. The value used is 1 or 0.
; Parm1 keyword is required for NETBIOS Driver.
; mandatory
Driver.TCPIP = 1

; Software Distribution Server Connection

; Distribution Server's System Name
ServerName = pinto

; Network driver and Distribution Server's address (TCP/IP for TCP/IP,
; NB for NETBIOS, TLI for IPX)
ServerDriver = TCP/IP

ServerAddress = client6

TCP.Hostname = think06
TargetAddress = think06
```

Figure 30. Example of a TME 10 Software Distribution for OS/2 Client Response File

Step 7: Preparing Software Object Profiles at the TME 10 Software Distribution for OS/2 Server

At the TME 10 Software Distribution for OS/2 server (SERV01), prepare the following software object profiles:

- warp.prf
- mpts.prf
- client.prf
- nfsifs.prf
- tcpip.prf
- nfs.prf

The software object profiles are used in the next step to build software objects at the TME 10 Software Distribution server. The files are then used to install OS/2 Warp Server on the TME 10 Software Distribution client. Samples of these software object profiles are provided on the CD-ROM in the SD4OS2\SAMPLES file.

Examples of the software object profiles required follow.

Warp Software Object Profile

```
GLOBAL NAME:            IBM.OS2V30.WARP.REF.1
DESCRIPTION:            IBM OS/2 3.0 WARP SERVER
LOCAL NAME:             $(REPOSITORY)\OS2.CHG
CHANGE FILE TYPE:       OS2CID


    INSTALL PROGRAM:

    PROGRAM NAME:       x:\img\warp\seinst.exe
    PARAMETERS:         /S:x:\img\warp /T:a:\ /B:c: ►
                        /R:x:\rsp\warp\os2.rsp ►
                        /L1:x:\log\warp\os2.l1
```

Figure 31. Example of a WARP software object profile

Note: If the target installation drive is not C:, change the drive specification in the `/B:` parameter.

MPTS Software Object Profile

```
GLOBAL NAME:            IBM.MPTSV20.REF.1
DESCRIPTION:            IBM MPTS WR08210
LOCAL NAME:             $(REPOSITORY)\mpts.chg
CHANGE FILE TYPE:       OS2CID



    INSTALL PROGRAM:
    PROGRAM NAME:   x:\img\mpts\mptsfix.CMD
    PARAMETERS:     x:\img\mpts\mpts.exe ►
                        /E:MAINT /S:x:\img\mpts /T:c:\ /TU:C:\ ►
                        /R:$(RSPFILE) /L1:x:\log\mpts\laps.l1

        RESPONSE FILE   C:\CID\IMG\SWDIST\PRISTINE\TCPIP\MPTS.RSP
```

Figure 32. Example of an MPTS software object profile

Note: If the target installation drive is not C:, change the drive specification in the `/T:` and `/TU:` parameters.

Redirector File Services Software Object Profile

```
GLOBAL NAME:            IBM.NFSIFS.REF.1
DESCRIPTION:            IBM nfs for TCPIP Pristine Scenario
LOCAL NAME:             $(REPOSITORY)\nfsifs.chg
CHANGE FILE TYPE:       OS2CID
DEFAULT TOKEN:          TARGETOSDRV=C:

    INSTALL PROGRAM:
        PROGRAM NAME:   x:\img\nfs\client\nfs.cmd
        PARAMETERS:     $(SERVERNFS) $(TARGETOSDRV) $(CODEDIR) ►
                        $(IMAGEDIR)
```

Figure 33. Example of Redirector File Services software object Profile

TME 10 Software Distribution for OS/2 Client Software Object Profile

```
GLOBAL NAME:       IBM.DIST.CLT31.REF.1
DESCRIPTION:       TME 10 Software Distribution for OS/2 Client
LOCAL NAME:        $(REPOSITORY)\clt.chg
CHANGE FILE TYPE:  OS2CID
POSTREQ COMMAND:   $(TARGETDIR)\bin\fndend.cmd
INSTALL PROGRAM:
    PROGRAM NAME:   x:\img\clt\INSTALL.EXE
    PARAMETERS:     /S:x:\img\clt /R:x:\rsp\clt\client.RSP ►
                    /A:I /L1:x:\log\clt\LOG1.TXT ►
                    /L2:x:\log\clt\LOG2.TXT /X /T:$(TARGETDIR)
```

Figure 34. Example of a TME 10 Software Distribution for OS/2 client software object Profile

TCP/IP Software Object Profile

```
GLOBAL NAME:            IBM.TCPIPV31.REF.1.0
DESCRIPTION:            Configuration for TCPIP V 3.1
CHANGE FILE TYPE:       OS2CID

INSTALL PROGRAM:
PROGRAM NAME:  x:\img\tcpip\install.exe
PARAMETERS:    /S:x:\img\tcpip /B:C: /R:x:\img\rsp\tcpip\tcp.rsp /L1:
```

Figure 35. Example of a TCP/IP software object Profile

NFS Software Object Profile

```
GLOBAL NAME:            IBM.NFS.REF.1
DESCRIPTION:            Configuration for NFS V 2.0
CHANGE FILE TYPE:       OS2CID

INSTALL PROGRAM:
    PROGRAM NAME:       x:\img\nfs\tcpinst2.exe
    PARAMETERS:         /SF– /A– /S:x:\img\nfs /B:C: ►
                        /R:x:\img\rsp\nfs\nfs.rsp ►
                        /L1:x:\log\nfs\nfs.log /T:c:\tcpip /TU:c:
```

Step 8: Building Software Objects at the TME 10 Software Distribution for OS/2 Server

1. Use the software object profiles prepared in the previous step to build software objects. Enter the following commands:

```
nvdm bld warp.prf
nvdm bld mpts.prf
nvdm bld client.prf
nvdm bld nfs.prf
nvdm bld tcpip.prf
```

2. After these commands are executed, the software objects are built, and cataloged at the TME 10 Software Distribution server with the name specified in the respective software object profiles.

This step does not need to be executed every time you install a pristine workstation, because the software objects are not workstation-specific.

Step 9: Starting Up TME 10 Software Distribution for OS/2 and the NFS Server

At the TME 10 Software Distribution server (SERV01), start TME 10 Software Distribution for OS/2 by entering the following command at the `C:` prompt:

```
NVDM start
```

Add the product shared token to dynamically customize the response files.

Enter the following command to use the shared tokens to install TME 10 Software Distribution.

The values of the variables shown are only examples. You must enter the correct values for your environment.

```
NVDM addpm -a -i TARGETDIR=D:\SOFTDIST -i CODEDIR=D:\ -i IMAGEDIR=C:\CID ►
              -i ROUTER=<9.87.231.9> -i NETMASK=<255.255.249.0> ►
              -i SERVERNFS=<cliente> -i DNSADDRESS=<9.87.238.4> ►
              -i DNSADDRESS1=<9.87.238.5> -i DNSDOMAIN=<Rome.IBM>
```

The variables of the previous command have the following meaning:

[TARGETDIR] It is the target client directory for TME 10 Software Distribution for OS/2

[CODEDIR] It is the local path where the remote agent is installed

[IMAGEDIR] It is the local root path for the product images

[ROUTER] It is the remote address of your router

[NETMASK] It is the TCP/IP netmask

[SERVERNFS] It is the NFS server host name

[DNSADDRESS] It is the dynamic name server address

[DNSADDRESS1] It is the alternative name server address

Note that, in this example, each client that is installed using this scenario will have TME 10 Software Distribution installed in the directory D:\SOFTDIST.

Step 10: Submitting the Install Requests

At the TME 10 Software Distribution server, submit the install requests for the workstation PS2CLI1 by entering the commands:

```
NVDM inst IBM.OS2V30.WARP.REF.1 IBM.MPTSV20.REF.1 ►
          IBM.NFS.REF.1 -N -W think06

NVDM inst IBM.TCPIPV31.REF.1 ►
          IBM.DIST.CLT31.REF.1 -N -W think06
```

Step 11: Starting Up the TME 10 Software Distribution Client

At the pristine workstation:

1. Insert the first startup diskette into drive A:.
2. Turn the power on.
3. When prompted, insert the second startup diskette into drive A:. The startup continues and at the end a prompt is displayed on the screen. Enter the following command, which partitions the hard disk according to the instructions found in the FDISK.DAT file.

   ```
   prepdsk
   ```

   The execution of this command requires five to ten minutes.

   At command completion, you are requested to restart the workstation. Insert the first startup diskette into drive `A:` and press the Ctrl+Alt+Del keys to restart the system.
4. When prompted, insert the second startup diskette into the drive. At the end of startup, a prompt is displayed.
5. Enter the command:

   ```
   install <client_name> <client_hostname> ►
   <IP_address> <sd_server> <srv_hostname>
   ```

   Where:

   <**client_name**> Is the unique name by which the client is known in the domain. It can be up to 32 characters long. For example, `think06`.

   <**client_hostname**> Is the TCP/IP host name of the client workstation. It can be up to 8 characters long. For example, `alpha`.

   <**IP_address**> Is the IP address of the client. It can be a unique name within the domain. It can be up to 8 characters long. For example, `9.87.233.161`.

   <**sd_server**> Is the name of the TME 10 Software Distribution server to which the pristine workstation is defined as a client.

   <**srv_hostname**> Is the TCP/IP hostname of the server. For example, `pinto`.

   The install.cmd procedure asks for the third diskette. The install.cmd procedure continues with the third diskette, and then it will ask you to remove the diskette. From this point on the pristine installation procedure is unattended.

Do not turn the workstation off. Unattended installation of OS/2 Warp now begins. It may take up to two hours for the installation process to complete.

Chapter 4. OS/2 Warp Server for e-business (Warp 4.5) NetBIOS Pristine Installation Scenario

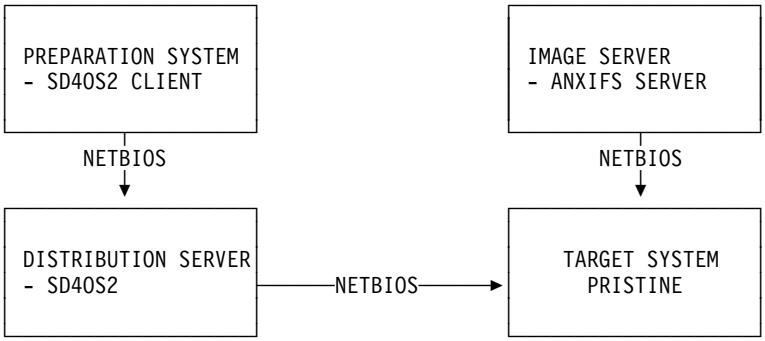
This chapter is intended to provide information on the software distribution of the OS/2 Warp Server for e-business (Wseb) using Tivoli's TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5.

The objective of this chapter is to describe the environment and the tasks required to install Wseb to a pristine workstation (a workstation that has no software installed) and CID-enabled products remotely, using TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 (SD4OS2).

In order to illustrate the various phases of setup and installation, we will use example scenarios to install Wseb, MPTS and the Software Distribution client over NetBIOS.

Environment

The following describes the general environment used for implementing this scenario.



- **Preparation System**

  This is the system where objects and images are prepared and packaged. It must have the same operating system as the Target Workstation and it must have an SD4OS2 client installed.

- **Distribution Server**

  The Distribution Server has the Software Distribution server product installed. In this scenario, it is a Software Distribution for OS/2.

- **Image Server**

  The system that provides the redirection support for the agent (pristine agent files, CID code Images, CID response files, CID log files, and command procedures)

  Note: For the purposes of these examples, the Image server must be an OS/2 system because the ANXIFS redirection server only runs on OS/2.

- **Target System**

  The system where CID-enabled software will be installed.

  For this scenario, these are the actual systems that will be used:

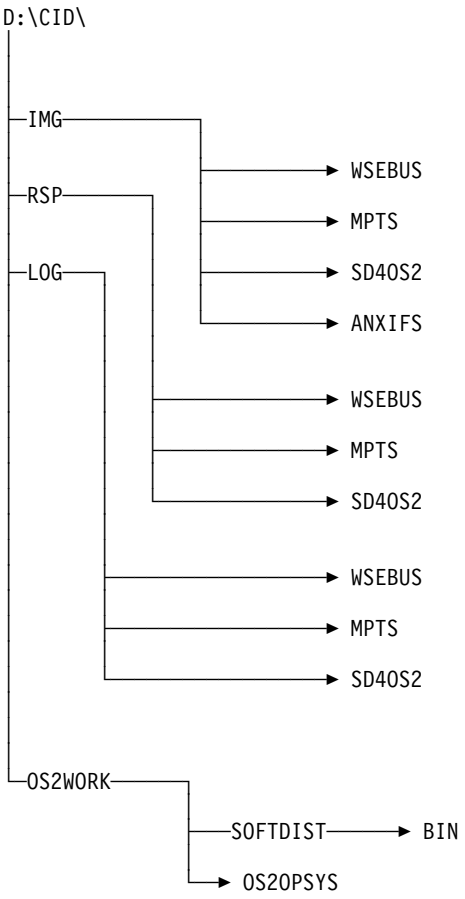
- SDSERV1
  - Preparation Workstation
  - Distribution Server
  - Image Server
- CLIENT1
  - Target System

Image/Directory Setup

The following section illustrates setting up images and directories.

Setup Activities

This document assumes that your product images, response files, log files, and samples will be placed in the SDSERV1, following subdirectory structure on the D: drive of SDSERV1. Adjust directory names to your needs if necessary.



The following steps describe how to set up the images and directories:

- Create Base Subdirectories

  Execute the following commands to create the subdirectories:

```
D:\
MD CID
CD CID
  MD IMG IMG\WSEBUS IMG\MPTS IMG\SD4OS2 IMG\ANXIFS
  MD RSP RSP\WSEBUS RSP\MPTS RSP\SD4OS2
  MD LOG LOG\WSEBUS LOG\MPTS LOG\SD4OS2
  MD OS2WORK OS2WORK\OS2OPSYS OS2WORK\SOFTDIST
  CD OS2WORK\SOFTDIST
  MD BIN
```

Figure 36. Create Base Subdirectories

- Copy the Wseb CID utilities to SDSERV1

The following Wseb utilities are required to perform this installation and must be copied to the \CID\IMG\WSEBUS directory if this has not been done previously.

- SEIMAGE.EXE
- SEDISK.EXE
- SEMAINT.EXE
- SEINST.EXE
- RSPINST.EXE

Place the Wseb CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive and execute the following commands:

```
UNPACK E: \OS2IMAGE\DISK_7\CID D: \CID\IMG\WSEBUS
UNPACK E: \OS2IMAGE\DISK_7\REQUIRED D: \CID\IMG\WSEBUS /N:RSPINST.EXE
```

(where E: is the CD_ROM drive)

- Copy the Wseb product images to SDSERV1

  If your are using a CD-ROM, place the CD in the CD-ROM drive and enter the following command:

  ```
  XCOPY E:\OS2IMAGE\*.* D:\CID\IMG\WSEBUS /S /E
  ```

  This will place all the required Wseb product diskettes in the appropriate directories.

  Note: In order to save disk space, the SYM_x subdirectories can be deleted.

- Copy the MPTS images to SDSERV1

  To create the MPTS image from the Wseb CD-ROM, enter the following command:

  ```
  XCOPY E:\CID\SERVER\MPTS\*.* D:\CID\IMG\MPTS /S /E
  ```

- Copy the ANXIFS images to SDSERV1

  To copy the ANXIFS images from the CD-ROM for TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5, enter the following command:

  ```
  PKUNZIP2 -D E:\SD4OS2\PRISTINE\ANXIFS.ZIP D:\CID\IMG\ANXIFS
  ```

  The ZIP contents will be unpacked into D:\CID\IMG\ANXIFS

- Copy the SD4OS2 files to the target directory

  SD4OS2 is only shipped on CD-ROM; so this section must be done from a system with a CD-ROM drive.

  Insert the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 CD-ROM (the September, 2000 version - CD Label LK3T-5087-00) and enter:

  ```
  D:
  XCOPY E:\SD4OS2\IMAGES\*.* D:\CID\IMG\SD4OS2 /S /E
  ```

  where E: is the drive letter of the CD-ROM drive

- Copy the BIN directory from an installed SD4OS2 Client onto SDSERV1.

  You must install the SD4OS2 client code (at the same level used in these scenarios) onto a client system, and then XCOPY the \SOFTDIST\BIN directory into D:\CID\OS2WORK\SOFTDIST\BIN.

  These client files are not SD4OS2 images. They are SD4OS2 client files from an installed SD4OS2 client, which are then copied to a directory on the server (D:\CID\OS2WORK).

Additional Hints and Tips

The following hints and tips are helpful for software distribution scenarios with TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5:

1. Ensure that you copy the BIN directory from an installed SD4OS2 client.
2. Do NOT copy the BIN directory from an installed SD4OS2 server. The server executables will not work in the pristine scenario.
3. Ensure that your SD4OS2 images are at the same level of SD4OS2 that are in your `\CID\IMG\SD4OS2`.
    a. If your \CID\IMG\SD4OS2 images are at Version 3.1.5 - CD Label LK3T-5087-00 (meaning dated October 2000), then your `\CID\OS2WORK\SOFTDIST\BIN` client executables must also be at this version level.

Setup Activities

The following section illustrates setup activities at the server such as preparing response file, server and client initialization files, and creating boot diskettes.

Prepare Response Files at SDSERV1

You must create three response files in the shared directory, `D:\CID\RSP`:

`D:\CID\RSP\WSEBUS\OS2.RSP` (response file for SEINST.EXE - a sample can be found under: `SD4OS2\SAMPLES\WSEBUS\OS2.RSP` on the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 CD-ROM)

`D:\CID\RSP\MPTS\MPTS_NB.RSP` (a sample can be found under: `SD4OS2\SAMPLES\WSEBUS\MPTS_NB.RSP` on the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 CD-ROM)

`D:\CID\RSP\SD4OS2\CLIENTNB.RSP` (a sample can be found under: `SD4OS2\SAMPLES\CLIENTNB.RSP` on the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 CD-ROM)

For pristine installations scenarios make sure the following requirements are met:

- OS/2 Response File OS2.RSP

  The following keywords must be set to the following values:

```
ExitOnError=1
FormatHPFS=C:,D:
MigrateConfigfiles=0
RebootRequired=0
```

```
AdditionalPrinters=0
APM=0
AlternateAdapter=0
* BaseFileSystem=1
CDROM=1
CountryCode=001
CountryKeyboard=US
DefaultPrinter=0
DisplayAdapter=0
Documentation=1
DOSSupport=1
WIN-OS/2Support=0
*WIN-OS/2Desktop=0
*ExistingWindowsPath=
*WindowsInstallSourcePath=\WINOS2\DISKETTES
*ShareDesktopConfigFiles=1
DPMI=1
ExitOnError=1
* FormatFAT=C:
FormatHPFS=C:,D:
* FormatJFS=E:
* FormatQuick=C:,D:
* FormatPartition=0
* Include=include.rsp
* IncludeAtEnd=atend.rsp
* IncludeInLine=inline.rsp
MigrateConfigFiles=0
Mouse=1
MousePort=0
OptionalSystemUtilities=1
OptionalSystemComponents=1
*OS2IniData=/AppName/KeyName/KeyValue/
PCMCIA=0
PCMCIAOptions=0
Optical=0
Infrared=0
PrimaryCodePage=1
PrinterPort=1
ProcessEnvironment=1
ProgressIndication=1
RebootRequired=0
SCSI=1
SerialDeviceSupport=1
```

Figure 37 (Part 1 of 3). Sample response file for OS2.RSP

```
* SourcePath=D:\os2se20
TargetDrive=C:
*WIN-OS/2TargetDrive=D:
SMP=0
SMPPath=C:\OS2\INSTALL
ToolsAndGames=2,6
* ConfigSysLine=call=D:\OS2\CMD.EXE /Q /CD:\LCUclient.CMD
* Copy=vga D:\ /n:ini.rc
* EarlyUserExit=T c:\config.sys
* ExtendedInstall=PROGRAM.EXE
* SeedConfigSysLine=REM This is a remark line in the seed CONFIG.SYS.
* UserExit=T.EXE D:\OS2\INSTALL\INSTALL.LOG
*DDISrc  = Z:\DDP
*DDIDest = D:\
*DDIDDP  = *.DDP
MultimediaSupport=0
ART.Selection=0
DAXCOMP1.Selection=0
DAXCOMP1.TarDrv=d:
Sysmgt.Selection=1
SRVDIAG.Selection=1
SRVDOC.Selection=0
ODSECBASE.Selection=1
ODSECBASE.TarDrv=C:
PRINTERUTIL.Selection=0
PUHPCOMMON.Selection=0
PUHPCOMMON.TarDrv=d:
PUHPJETCLIENT.Selection=0
PUHPJETCLIENT.TarDrv=d:
PUHPJETSERVER.Selection=0
PUHPJETSERVER.TarDrv=d:
PUMARKCOMMON.Selection=0
PUMARKCOMMON.TarDrv=d:0
PUMARKNET.Selection=0
PUMARKNET.TarDrv=c:
PUMARKVIS.Selection=0
PUMARKVIS.TarDrv=d:
```

Figure 37 (Part 2 of 3). Sample response file for OS2.RSP

```
HOTPLUG.Selection=0
WARMSWAP.Selection=0
Java11.RunDrv=d:
Java11.Selection=1
runtime.selection=1
runtimeconfig.selection=1
samples.selection=0
samplesconfig.selection=0
samples.smpdrv=d:
samples.smppath=\JAVA11
toolkit.selection=0
toolkitconfig.selection=0
toolkit.tktdrv=d:
toolkit.tktpath=\JAVA11
tlktdoc.selection=0
tlktdocconfig.selection=0
tlktdoc.tdocdrv=d:
tlktdoc.tdocpath=\JAVA11
debugger.selection=0
debuggerconfig.selection=0
debugger.dbgdrv=d:
debugger.dbgpath=\JAVA11\ICATJAVA
IBMFONTA.Selection=0
IBMFONTG.Selection=0
IBMFONTT.Selection=0
IBMFONTJ.Selection=0
IBMFONTC.Selection=0
IBMFONTS.Selection=0
IBMFONTK.Selection=0
IBMFONTU.Selection=1
XIBMFONT.InstDrive=d:
LVMGUI.Selection=1
SMPfiles.Selection=0
```

Figure 37 (Part 3 of 3). Sample response file for OS2.RSP

- MPTS Response File MPTS_NB.RSP

```
INST_SECTION = (
  UPGRADE_LEVEL = New
  Target              = C:
  INSTALL = PRODUCT
  )


PROTOCOL = (
[PROT_MAN]

   DriverName = PROTMAN$


[IBMLXCFG]

   landd_nif = landd.nif
   netbeui_nif = netbeui.nif
   IBMTOK_nif = IBMTOK.NIF

[NETBIOS]

   DriverName = netbios$
   ADAPTER0 = netbeui$,0

[landd_nif]

   DriverName = LANDD$
   Bindings = IBMTOK_nif
   ETHERAND_TYPE = "I"
   SYSTEM_KEY = 0x0
   OPEN_OPTIONS = 0x2000
   TRACE = 0x0
   LINKS = 8
   MAX_SAPS = 3
   MAX_G_SAPS = 0
   USERS = 3
```

Figure 38 (Part 1 of 3). Sample response file for MPTS_NB.RSP

```
   TI_TICK_G1 = 255
   T1_TICK_G1 = 15
   T2_TICK_G1 = 3
   TI_TICK_G2 = 255
   T1_TICK_G2 = 25
   T2_TICK_G2 = 10
   IPACKETS = 250
   UIPACKETS = 100
   MAXTRANSMITS = 6
   MINTRANSMITS = 2
   TCBS = 64
   GDTS = 30
   ELEMENTS = 800
   NETFLAGS = 0x0

[netbeui_nif]

   DriverName = netbeui$
   Bindings = IBMTOK_nif
   ETHERAND_TYPE = "I"
   USEADDRREV = "YES"
   OS2TRACEMASK = 0x0
   SESSIONS = 254
   NCBS = 254
   NAMES = 42
   SELECTORS = 50
   USEMAXDATAGRAM = "NO"
   ADAPTRATE = 1000
   WINDOWERRORS = 0
   MAXDATARCV = 4352
   TI = 30000
   T1 = 1000
   T2 = 200
   MAXIN = 1
   MAXOUT = 1
   NETBIOSTIMEOUT = 2000
   NETBIOSRETRIES = 3
   NAMECACHE = 1000
   RNDOPTION = 1
```

Figure 38 (Part 2 of 3). Sample response file for MPTS_NB.RSP

```
   PIGGYBACKACKS = 1
   DATAGRAMPACKETS = 50
   PACKETS = 350
   LOOPPACKETS = 8
   PIPELINE = 5
   MAXTRANSMITS = 6
   MINTRANSMITS = 2
   DLCRETRIES = 10
   FCPRIORITY = 5
   NETFLAGS = 0x0


[IBMTOK_nif]

   DriverName = IBMTOK$
   DataRate = "AUTO"
   EnableTxEofInt = "YES"
   MaxTransmits = 31
   MaxTxFrameSize = 4500
   MinRcvBuffs = 20
   RcvBuffSize = 2252
   FullDuplex = "YES"
   TxPriMax = 6
   TxPriThresh = 1
   LLCOnly = "NO"
   EOIDelay = 0
   RTSWMode = "Disable"
   RTSWTableSize = 16
   RTSWSubnetMask = "Disable"
   RTSWHoldingTime = 20

  )
```

Figure 38 (Part 3 of 3). Sample response file for MPTS_NB.RSP

- SD4OS2 Response File CLIENTNB.RSP

```
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;;                                                                              ;;
;; DESCRIPTION:  Software Distribution for OS/2 Client                          ;;
;;               sample configuration                                           ;;
;;                                                                              ;;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;; WARNING WARNING WARNING WARNING WARNING WARNING WARNING WARNING              ;;
;; ------------------------------------------------------------------          ;;
;; Workstation specific variables are enclosed between $( and ); for           ;;
;; each of these variables you are required to specify a value before          ;;
;; using the response file.                                                    ;;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;


; Target path
FILE = c:\softdist

; Work area
; It is the path for the data directory
WORK = c:\

; Software Distribution components to install
COMP = Distribution Client
;COMP = Preparation Site Client GUI
;COMP = Distribution Client GUI
;COMP = Distribution Client Documentation
;COMP = Distribution Mobile Client
;COMP = Preparation Site Mobile Client GUI
;COMP = Distribution Mobile Client GUI
;COMP = Hw/Sw Discovery Tool
```

Figure 39 (Part 1 of 3). Sample response fle for CLIENTNB.RSP

```
DELETEBACKUP = No
SAVEBACKUP   = Yes
CFGUPDATE    = Auto
OVERWRITE    = Yes

; Software Distribution System Name. This identify the system in the network
; mandatory
SystemName   = CLIENT1

; Distribution Client's Target address. Warning: this field should be
; max 8 characters in length.
;This field is mandatory if you have already a client installed and
;if you have changed the default TargetAddress value
TargetAddress = CLIENT1

; Network drivers and Network addresses
; You may specify five types of Driver keywords. The value used is 1 or 0.
; Parm1 keyword is required for NETBIOS Driver.
; mandatory
Driver.NETBIOS = 1
Parm1.NETBIOS = CLIENT1
; Distribution Client's hostname.
; TCP.Hostname = $$(HostName)
; Driver.TCPIP = 1
; Driver.IPX = 1

; Distribution directories
BackupArea  = C:\SOFTDIST\BACKUP
ServiceArea =  C:\SOFTDIST\SERVICE
Repository  =  C:\SOFTDIST\REPOS
WorkArea    =  C:\SOFTDIST\WORK

; Software Distribution Server Connection

; Distribution Server's System Name
ServerName = SDSERV1
```

Figure 39 (Part 2 of 3). Sample response fle for CLIENTNB.RSP

```
; Network driver and Distribution Server's address (TCP/IP for TCP/IP,
; NB for NETBIOS, TLI for IPX)
ServerDriver = NB

ServerAddress = SDSERV1

; Inventory program path
; It is the path for the inventory program
; InventoryProgram = $(FILEPATH)BIN\FNDINV.EXE
```

Figure 39 (Part 3 of 3). Sample response fle for CLIENTNB.RSP

Configure Redirection Support

The NetBIOS redirection support is provided by ANXIFS, which is provided as part of SD4OS2 server. ANXSRV.INI must be customized before starting the server redirection support, and ANXCLT.INI must be customized before creating client boot diskettes.

1. Modify ANXSRV.INI

   Edit `D:\CID\IMG\ANXIFS\SERVER\ANXSRV.INI` and update it as follows:

```
Adapter=0;
Numclients=20
SERVERNAME=SDSERV1
permitwrite=yes

;REMAGT is the alias for the TME 10 Software Distribution
;Client code that the pristine target needs access to
;in order to complete the install.
;C:cid\pristine is where this is located

ALIAS=RW,SINGLE,REMAGT,D:\CID\OS2WORK

;CODESRV is the alias for the CID directory, D:\CID is the directory
;where the images, the response files and log files are located

ALIAS=RW,SINGLE,CODESRV,D:\CID
```

Figure 40. TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 ANXSRV.INI File

   The highlighted lines indicate changes from the original version.

   This file should be customized to reflect the directory structure in your environment and the aliases you wish to use.

   Note: This file is used on SDSERV1 to define the redirection server configuration.

2. Modify ANXCLT.INI

   Edit `D:\CID\IMG\ANXIFS\CLIENT\ANXCLT.INI` and update it as follows:

```
;Adapter Number supported 0-1

adapter=0

;Max numbers of attach

numattach=4

;Clientname not mandatory if this key is not set a random name will
;be used
;clientname=ff
;Alias to be attached
;z is the disk letter
;ANXS01 is the Anxifs Server Name
;REMAGT is the alias for the remote Agent
;CODESRV is the alias for the cid directory where the images, response
;files and log files are loaded

ATTACH=Z,SDSERV1,REMAGT
ATTACH=X,SDSERV1,CODESRV
```

Figure 41. TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 ANXCLI.INI File

The highlighted lines indicate changes from the original version.

This file should be customized to reflect the directory structure in your environment, the aliases you wish to use, and the SD4OS2 server name.

Note: This file is used on CLIENT1 to define the redirection client configuration. li.Start the Redirection Server

The ANXIFS redirection server can be started by issuing the following commands:

```
D:
CD D:\CID\IMG\ANXIFS\SERVER
APISERV ANXSRV.INI
```

Prepare Pristine Client Boot Diskettes

Three boot diskettes are required for the Wseb NetBIOS pristine installation scenario:

- Diskette 0
- Diskette 1
- Diskette 2

1. Create the initial OS/2 boot diskettes

   Insert Diskette 0 into Drive A: and issue the following command:

   ```
   D:\CID\IMG\WSEBUS\SEDISK /S:D:\CID\IMG\WSEBUS /T:A:
   ```

   When prompted, insert Diskette 1 and then Diskette 2.

PCMCIA Support

If you are are creating boot diskettes for ThinkPads, refer to either:

`E:\OS2IMAGE\DISK_0\README.CID` of the Wseb CD-ROM or
`D:\CID\IMG\WSEBUS\DISK_0\README.CID`

2. Add standard NetBIOS support to the last boot diskette.

   Leave the last diskette in Drive A: and issue:

   `D:\CID\IMG\MPTS\THINLAPS D:\CID\IMG\MPTS A: IBMTOK.NIF`

   Note: `IBMTOK.NIF` is just an example - use the appropriate adapter nif file for your system.

   When installing Wseb, you will be prompted to insert Diskette 1 in order for `THINLAPS` to update the CONFIG.SYS.

Consider Correct Ring Speed

Specify the correct NIF file for your adapter. For example, use IBMTOKCS.NIF for PCMCIA token-ring adapters.

You may need to edit the PROTOCOL.INI in these cases. For example, for IBMTOKCS.NIF, you may need to change the RINGSPEED keyword if the standard ring speed is not 16 MBit/sec.

3. Leave the last diskette in Drive A: and copy the files listed in Table 6 to the startup diskette by entering the command:

   `COPY <filename> A:`

   `Where <filename> is the name of the file with its complete path.`

Table 6. Files to Add to Startup Diskettes

File Name	File Location
ANXCLT.INI	D:\CID\IMG\ANXIFS\CLIENT
ANXIFCOM.IFS	D:\CID\IMG\ANXIFS\CLIENT
ANXIFCOM.SYS	D:\CID\IMG\ANXIFS\CLIENT
ANXIFPID.SYS	D:\CID\IMG\ANXIFS\CLIENT
ANXREQ.EXE	D:\CID\IMG\ANXIFS\CLIENT
ANXIFS.MSG	D:\CID\IMG\ANXIFS\CLIENT
FNDVDSK.CMD	D:\CID\IMG\ANXIFS\CLIENT
INSTALL.CMD	D:\CID\IMG\ANXIFS\CLIENT
OSO001.MSG	D:\CID\IMG\ANXIFS\CLIENT
VDISK.SYS	C:\OS2\BOOT
Note: The `VDISK.SYS` file must be retrieved from the same OS/2 version used to create the startup diskettes.	

Edit the CONFIG.SYS file located on Diskette 1 by adding **.;** (period and semicolon) as the first value in the `LIBPATH`, `PATH`, and `DPATH` statements and modify the following shell line to read:

```
SET OS2_SHELL=CMD.EXE /K FNDVDSK.CMD
```

Add lines in CONFIG.SYS:

```
DEVICE=\ANXIFPID.SYS
DEVICE=\ANXIFCOM.SYS
DEVICE=\VDISK.SYS 700,,
IFS=ANXIFCOM.IFS
```

Warning

Due to the OS/2 APAR PJ21356, the `UHPFS.DLL` is missing. This file is required for formatting during Wseb installation. As documented in the APAR, you must enter the following command from `E:\CID\LOCINSTU` on the Wseb CD-ROM to unpack the missing file:

```
GETREXX E:\OS2IMAGE D:\CID\DLL\WSEBUS
```

Edit the CONFIG.SYS file located on Diskette 1 by adding `X:\DLL\WSEBUS;` to `LIBPATH` (where `X` is the redirected drive specified in the `ANXCLT.INI` file).

For more information, please refer to `README.CID` located on the Wseb CD-ROM:

```
E:\OS2IMAGE\DISK_0\README.CID
```

Target-specifc Parameters

The NetBIOS pristine boot diskettes do not contain target-specific configuration information and can be used concurrently on multiple targets.

(The NetBIOS protocol does not contain target-specific parameters, and the ANXIFS redirector creates a unique computer name. Thus, the single set of boot diskettes can be used concurrently).

Create the Change Files

The profiles for each object that will be installed at the target have to be created at the software distribution server.

At the Software Distribution server (SDSERV01) prepare the following software object profiles in the directory `D:\CID\OS2WORK\OS2OPSYS` by copying them from the `SD4OS2\SAMPLES` on the CD-ROM:

```
wsebus.pro
mptsnb.pro
clientnb.pro
anxifs.pro
clifi.pro
```

The software object profiles are used in the next step to build software objects at the Software Distribution server. Samples of the software object profiles are provided on the CD-ROM under the `SD4OS2\SAMPLES` directory.

Examples of the software object profiles required follow:

Note: The `PARAMETERS` line must be a single line.

```
GLOBAL NAME:            IBM.WSEBUS.WARP.REF.4500
DESCRIPTION:            IBM OS/2 4.5 Pristine
LOCAL NAME:             $(REPOSITORY)\warp.chg
CHANGE FILE TYPE:       OS2CID
DEFAULT TOKEN:          TargetDir=C:


INSTALL PROGRAM:

PROGRAM NAME:   x:\img\wsebus\seinst.exe
PARAMETERS:     /S:x:\img\wsebus /T:a:\ /B:$(TargetDir)
                /R:x:\rsp\wsebus\os2.rsp /L1:x:\log\wsebus\os2.l1
```

Figure 42. Wseb Pristine Installation Profile WSEBUS.PRO

Note: The PARAMETERS line must be a single line.

```
GLOBAL NAME:            IBM.MPTSNB.REF.1
DESCRIPTION:            IBM MPTS
LOCAL NAME:             $(REPOSITORY)\mptn.chg
CHANGE FILE TYPE:       OS2CID



INSTALL PROGRAM:
PROGRAM NAME:   x:\img\mpts\mpts.EXE
PARAMETERS:     /E:MAINT/S:x:\img\mpts /T:$(TargetDir) /TU:$(TargetDir)
                /R:$(RSPFILE) /L1:x:\log\mpts\$(TARGET).l1

RESPONSE FILE:  E:\CID\RSP\MPTS\MPTS_NB.RSP
```

Figure 43. MPTS Pristine Install Profile MPTSNB.PRO (With NETBIOS)

Note: The PARAMETERS line must be a single line.

```
GLOBAL NAME:            IBM.ANXIFS.REF.1
DESCRIPTION:            IBM anxifs client
LOCAL NAME:             $(REPOSITORY)\anxclt.chg
DEFAULT TOKEN:          TargetDir=C:
CHANGE FILE TYPE:       OS2CID

INSTALL PROGRAM:
PROGRAM NAME:   x:\img\anxifs\client\anxifs.cmd
PARAMETERS:     x: $(TargetDir) z:
```

Figure 44. ANXIFS Pristine Install Profile ANXIFS.PRO

Note: The PARAMETERS line must be a single line.

```
GLOBAL NAME:      TME10.SD4OS2.CLTNB.REF.315
DESCRIPTION:      TME 10 Software Distribution for OS/2 over netbios
LOCAL NAME:       $(REPOSITORY)\clt.chg
CHANGE FILE TYPE: OS2CID
DEFAULT TOKEN:    TDIR=C:\SOFTDIST


POSTREQ COMMAND: $(TDIR)\BIN\FNDEND.CMD

INSTALL PROGRAM:
PROGRAM NAME:  X:\IMG\SD4OS2\INSTALL.EXE
PARAMETERS:    /S:X:\IMG\SD4OS2 /R:$(RSPFILE) /L1:X:\LOG\SD4OS2\$(TARGET).L1
               /L2:X:\LOG\CLT\$(TARGET).L2  /X

RESPONSE FILE: E:\CID\RSP\SD4OS2\CLIENTNB.RSP
```

Figure 45. SD4OS2 Client Install Profile CLIENTNB.PRO

Note: The PARAMETERS line must be a single line.

```
GLOBAL NAME:                  IBM.CLIFI.INSTALL.REF.1
DESCRIPTION:                  IBM CLIFI
LOCAL NAME:                   $(REPOSITORY)\clifi.chg
CHANGE FILE TYPE:             OS2CID
COMPRESSION TYPE:             LZW
REBOOT REQUIRED:              NO
REMOVABLE:                    YES
ACTIVABLE:                    YES
INTERACTIVE:                  NO
AUTHORIZE:                    NONE
SW HISTORY RESET:             NO
INSTALLATION DURATION:        00:00:00
COST:                         0
INSTALL PROGRAM:
    PROGRAM NAME:             c:\os2\install\clifi.exe

    PARAMETERS: /A:C /F:C:\OS2\INSTALL /B:C:
                /S:x:\img\wsebus\fi
                /R:C:\OS2\INSTALL\FIBASE.RSP
                /R2:x:\rsp\wsebus\os2.rsp
                /L1:x:\log\wsebus\$(TARGET).FI1
                /L2:X:\LOG\WSEBUS\$(TARGET).FI2
```

Figure 46. Feature Installer Profile CLIFI.PRO

To create the objects, issue the following commands:

```
D:
CD \CID\OS2WORK\OS2OPSYS
NVDM BLD WSEBUS.PRO
NVDM BLD MPTSNB.PRO
NVDM BLD CLIENTNB.PRO
NVDM BLD ANXIFS.PRO
NVDM BLD CLIFI.PRO
```

The objects are created, and the global names are added to the catalog.

Install the Pristine Client

The following illustrates steps to do to enable software distribution to a pristine client.

Define Client at SDSERV1

Issue the following command to define the pristine client:

```
NVDM ADDTG CLIENT1 -s CLIENT1 -a CLIENT1 -y OS/2 -tp nbi:CLIENT1
```

Define Client Specific Installation Parameters

If you wish to install the pristine client on a drive other than C:, also define a value for `TargerDir`:

```
NVDM ADDPM CLIENT1 -i TargetDir=D:
```

Notes:

1. CLIENT1 by default will install on the C: drive. You only need to specify this override token if you want to install it on another drive letter.
2. Adding this token does not set up the Boot Manager settings that are needed to enable the boot of an alternate partition.

Submit Installation Commands at SDSERV1

Issue the following commands to submit the installation:

```
NVDM INST IBM.WSEBUS.WARP.REF.4500 IBM.MPTSNB.REF.1 IBM.ANXIFS.REF.1 -n -w CLIENT1
```

```
NVDM INST TME10.SD4OS2.CLTNB.REF.315 IBM.CLIFI.INSTALL.REF.1 -n -w CLIENT1
```

Note: The first two lines form one single command. The `-n` flag indicates that this is a non-removable install. None of these OS2CID objects have BACKUP, REMOVE, or ACCEPT programs defined; so the installs must be non-removable.

Boot CLIENT1 from Diskettes

CLIENT1 can be booted from diskette before or after submitting the installation commands:

1. Insert Diskette 0 in drive A:
2. Reboot the system.

3. When prompted insert Diskette 1 and press Enter.
4. When prompted insert Diskette 2 and press Enter.
5. Partition the hard disk.

Note

The hard disk must be partitioned, and the OS/2 installation drive must be formatted before starting the next step;

These steps could have been done previously (because of a reinstall versus a printine install), could be done manually, or could be done through the command file.

In a CID installation for a pristine environment, the disk must be partitioned through command line procedures using LVM. FDISK (which is unable set up LVM and the Compatibility volumes required for the installation) is no longer available and no longer applies.

Disk Partitioning Using LVM during CID

If you are installing a new server and you want to install it unattended using CID, then you need to partition the disks and set up the volumes as required for the rest of the installation. The supporting files for LVM are located on the `d:\cid\img\wsebus\disk_6`. They are:

```
LVM.DLL
LVM.EXE
LVM.MSG
LVMH.MSG
```

In addition, two other files must be retrieved from the directory `\OS2\DLL` on a machine where a prior installation of Wseb has already taken place:

```
MSG.DLL
NLS.DLL
```

Note

The user should be aware the LVM.EXE file shipped on the Wseb CD-ROM is defective. A patch exists and details can be found in APAR PJ27044. A working copy of LVM.EXE can be extracted from Fixpack XR_E001, which is available at:

ftp://ps.software.ibm.com/ps/products/os2/fixes/v4.5warp/english-us/

The following example illustrates the use of LVM from the command line. Your syntax may vary depending on how you want to set up your server disk.

First, we delete all definitions on the hard disk by typing:

```
lvm /delete:all,volumes
lvm /delete:all,unused
lvm /delete:all,primary
lvm /delete:all,lvm
lvm /delete:all,logical
lvm /delete:all,compatibility
```

or by running DELALL.CMD which is located on the Software Distribution CD-ROM under the `SD4OS2\SAMPLES` directory.

Similarly, partition the hard disk and create volumes by entering:

```
lvm /create:partition,system,1,510,primary,bootable
lvm /create:volume,compatibility,bootos2,C:,system,1,system
lvm /create:partition,data,1,1030,logical,nonbootable
lvm /create:volume,compatibility,noboot,D:,data,1,data
```

or by running CREATEP.CMD which is located on the Software Distribution CD-ROM under the SD4OS2\SAMPLES directory.

6. (Optional) Format the hard disk. In the OS2.RSP example, the formatting procedure is an automatic part of the installation.
7. From the OS/2 command prompt, issue the following command:

   ```
   INSTALL CLIENT1 CLIENT1 SDSERV1 SDSERV1
   ```

   where:

   `CLIENT1` is the unique name by which the client is known in the domain. It can be up to 32 charactes long.

   `CLIENT1` is the target address of the client. It can be the last 8 characters of the adaptor address or a unique name within the domain. It can up to 8 chararcters long.

   `SDSERV1` is the software distribution server name.

   `SDSERV1` is the server address. It can be the last 8 characters of the adaptor address or a unique name within the domain. It can up to 8 chararcters long.

Remember

Remember, SD4OS2 is case-sensitive; use the same case in all your definitions.

Do not turn the workstation off. Unattended installation of Wseb now begins.

Warning

Please be patient - it may take some time for the installation process to complete.

Verify Request Completion

At the server SDSERV1, issue the following command:

```
NVDM LSRQ -w CLIENT1
```

to display the status of all requests for CLIENT1. The requests are completed successfully only if the Status shows as successful:

```
Request ID: SDSERV1 root 425 0
Domain: SDSERV1
Target: CLIENT1
Submission time: 10/06/00 05:12 PM
Request type: Install
Object: IBM.WSEBUS.WARP.REF.4500
Status: Successful
Error severity:0
Error code: 0000:0000
Completion time: 10/06/00 05:40 PM

Request ID: SDSERV1 root 426 0
Domain: SDSERV1
Target: CLIENT1
Submission time: 10/06/00 05:13 PM
Request type: Install
Object: IBM.SD4OS2.CLTNB.REF.315
Status: Successful
Error severity:0
Error code: 0000:0000
Completion time: 10/06/00 05:50 PM
```

Note that for a corequisite installation, only the first global name is shown in the `Object` field.

A completed request can be deleted by issuing the following command:

```
NVDM ERASEREQ xxx
```

where `xxx` is the numeric request number. The request numbers from the above examples are `425` and `426`.

Install the Pristine Client

Chapter 5. Pristine Installation Scenario for a Windows NT Version 3.51 Client

This scenario explains how to install the Microsoft Windows NT Version 3.51 operating system and the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 Client for Windows NT Version 3.51 on a pristine machine in either attended mode or partially unattended mode. After the installation, the pristine machine will function as a Windows NT Version 3.51 server with the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 Client for Windows NT Version 3.51 running on it.

To complete this pristine installation, you must perform the following tasks:

- Copy the source files for the Windows NT Version 3.51 operating system onto a Windows NT Version 3.51 machine named, for example, SERVER1
- Copy the source files for the TME 10 Software Distribution Client onto SERVER1
- Prepare a startup diskette for the pristine client machine
- Use the startup diskette to set up the pristine machine and connect it to SERVER1

Note: To run this scenario, the user must be logged on with administrator authority.

Environment

- Pentium P100 machine that is named, for example, `SERVER1`.

  SERVER1 has Windows NT Version 3.51 installed and uses the TCP/IP and NetBEUI protocols. It is used as the preparation site and the image repository.

- Pentium P130 pristine machine that is named, for example, `CLIENT12`.

  In this scenario, CLIENT12 will be configured as a stand-alone server in domain NTDOM1, and as a TME 10 Software Distribution for Windows NT Version 3.51 client.

- PS/2 machine that has DOS installed, and is used to transfer the DOS system to a diskette.

SERVER1 and CLIENT12 are in the same domain, NTDOM1. They are connected by NetBEUI during the pristine installation, and by NetBEUI and TCP/IP after the installation. The TME 10 Software Distribution server, ZICO, can be in the same domain or in another domain.

Hardware Requirements

- CD-ROM that contains the Server Based Setup program for Windows NT Version 3.51 installation
- CD-ROM that contains the source files for the TME 10 Software Distribution Client for Windows NT Version 3.51
- One blank high-density diskette
- Memory

  The following are the minimum RAM requirements:

  – 16 MB at the server (16 MB is the minimum, but 32 MB will improve performance.)

  - 16 MB at the client
  - 4 MB at the PS/2 machine
- Disk space
  - 70 MB at the server for Windows NT Version 3.51 and the TME 10 Software Distribution Client for Windows NT Version 3.51 (The files are compressed.)
  - 110 MB at the client for Windows NT Version 3.51 and the TME 10 Software Distribution Client for Windows NT Version 3.51

Software Requirements

- The installation files for the TME 10 Software Distribution Client for Windows NT Version 3.51 on CD-ROM
- The installation files for Windows NT Version 3.51 on CD-ROM
- MS-DOS or IBM-DOS 6.0 or higher for the PS/2 machine
- Microsoft Windows NT Version 3.51 *Resource Kit* manual. You must order this book separately.

  The *Resource Kit* manual is required only if you use the Windows NT Version 3.51 Setup Manager to perform the pristine installation. You do not need it if you use the `UNATTEND.TXT` file to perform the pristine installation.

Communication Protocols

The following communication protocols are embedded in and supported by Windows NT Version 3.51:

- TCP/IP
- NetBEUI

The NetBEUI protocol is used when you run this installation scenario. When the pristine installation is complete, the TME 10 Software Distribution client will be configured with both NetBEUI and TCP/IP.

Note: In this scenario, the TCP/IP host name also matches the computer name of the pristine machine.

Copying the Files from the CD-ROMs to SERVER1

Perform the following steps to copy the source files for Windows NT Version 3.51 and the TME 10 Software Distribution Client for Windows NT Version 3.51 to SERVER1:

1. Create the directory `CLIENTS` in the root directory on the C: drive on SERVER1.
2. Create the following directories and subdirectories on the root directory on the D drive on SERVER1:
   - `\I386`
   - `\I386\<PRISTINE TCP/IP HOSTNAME>`
   - `\NVDMA`

   Note that two drives, the C: and D: drives, are used in this example. It is possible to use only one drive.

3. Copy the file NCADMIN.INF from the directory \clients on the Windows NT Version 3.51 Server installation CD-ROM to the directory c:\clients on SERVER1.
4. Use the command XCOPY to copy the directory clients\msclient with all its subdirectories from the Windows NT Version 3.51 CD-ROM to the directory c:\clients\msclient on SERVER1. Enter the following command:

   ```
   XCOPY E:\CLIENTS\MSCLIENT\*.* c:\CLIENTS\MSCLIENT\*.* \s \e
   ```

5. Copy all the files from the directory I386 on the installation CD-ROM for the Windows NT Version 3.51 Server to the directory D:\I386 on SERVER1.
6. Copy the source files for the TME 10 Software Distribution Client for Windows NT Version 3.51 from the TME 10 Software Distribution CD-ROM to the directory D:\NVDMA on SERVER1.
7. Customize the unattended installation file NVDMA\SETUP.ISS:

   a. Choose the TME 10 Software Distribution components you want to install:

      - Base client
      - Graphical user interface
      - Documentation
      - HW/SW discovery
      - Mobile client

   b. Enable the boot option.

      The boot option is mandatory. It enables the pristine target to reboot automatically during the installation process.

   The following is a sample NVDMA\SETUP.ISS installation file:

```
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;;                                                                            ;;
;;  SETUP.ISS response file for a silent Installation.                        ;;
;;                                                                            ;;
;;  copy SETUP.ISS on your private directory and invoke SETUP as              ;;
;;  shown:                                                                    ;;
;;                                                                            ;;
;;     SETUP  -f1c:\mydir\setup.iss  -s                        ;;
;;                                                                            ;;
;;  Check the results of the silent installation in the log                   ;;
;;  file created by SETUP (through the -f2 option) and in the                 ;;
;;  file named INSTLOG placed in the installation directory.                  ;;
;;                                                                            ;;
;;  Only the fields identified by the string ";******" can be                 ;;
;;  modified.                                                                 ;;
;;  All the other fields MUST not be modified.                                ;;
;;                                                                            ;;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;
;
[InstallSHIELD Silent]
Version=v3.00.000
File=Response File
[Application]
Name=DemoSHIELD v4.0
```

```
Version=4.00.000
Company=SampleCompany
[DlgOrder]
Dlg0=Welcome-0
Dlg1=AskOptions-0
Dlg2=AskOptions-1
Dlg3=AskOptions-2
Dlg4=SdComponentDialog-0
Dlg5=SdSelectFolder-0
Dlg6=SdShowDlgEdit3-0
Dlg7=SdShowDlgEdit2-0
Dlg8=AskOptions-3
Dlg9=SdFinishReboot-0
Count=10
[Welcome-0]
Result=1
[AskOptions-0]
;
Result=1
;
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;
;   THIS SECTION IS MEANINGFUL ONLY FOR MIGRATION FROM THE PREVIOUS
;   RELEASE OF SOFTWARE DISTRIBUTION
;
;   Information provided in this section is relative to the dialog
;   with the title "Select Migration".
;
;******            Sel-0 "YES"
;                  Sel-1 "NO"
;
;                  Sel-X=0 means component NOT selected
;                  Sel-X=1 means component     selected
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
Sel-0=1
Sel-1=0
;
;
;
[AskOptions-1]
;
Result=1
;
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;
;   Information provided in this section is relative to the dialog
;   with the title "Select Installation".
```

```
;
;******            Sel-0 "Software Distribution CLIENT"
;                   Sel-1 "Software Distribution SERVER"
;
;                   Sel-X=0 means component NOT selected
;                   Sel-X=1 means component     selected
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
Sel-0=1
Sel-1=0
;
;
;
[AskOptions-2]
;
Result=1
;
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;
;   THIS SECTION IS MEANINGFUL ONLY FOR FUTURE RE-INSTALLATION
;
;   Information provided in this section is relative to the dialog
;   with the title "Reinstall Selection".
;
;******            Sel-0 "Update the current installed components"
;                   Sel-1 "Install additional components"
;
;                   Sel-X=0 means component NOT selected
;                   Sel-X=1 means component     selected
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
Sel-0=0
Sel-1=1
;
;
;
[SdComponentDialog-0]
;
Result=1
Component-type=string
;
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;
;   Information provided in this section is relative to the dialog
;   with the title "Select Components".
;
;******            Component-count "equal to the number of elements listed
;                                    below (Component-x)"
```

```
;
;******            Component-x     "equal to the option you want to install"
;
;
; WARNING: Use the appropriate Component-.. keys (SERVER or CLIENT SECTION)
;          depending on what you want to install.
;          The numbers following Component-.. must start with 0 and
;          must be sequential.
;          (i.e. Component-0 Component-1 Component-2  -->   valid sequence)
;          (i.e. Component-0 Component-1 Component-3  --> invalid sequence)
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;
; SERVER SECTION
;
;Component-count=5
;Component-0=Distribution Server Base
;Component-1=Distribution GUI
;Component-2=Distribution Documentation
;Component-3=HW/SW Discovery
;Component-4=Distribution Server Remote Communication
;
;
;
; CLIENT SECTION
;
Component-count=2
Component-0=Distribution Client Base
;Component-2=Distribution GUI
Component-1=Distribution Documentation
;Component-3=HW/SW Discovery
;Component-4=Distribution Client Mobile
;
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;
;   THIS SECTION IS MEANINGFUL ONLY FOR THE FIRST INSTALLATION EITHER OF A
;   CLIENT OR A SERVER
;
;   Information provided in this section is relative to the dialog
;   with the title "Select Components".
;
;******            szDir = "Target Directory where the product is installed
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
szDir=C:\SOFTDIST
;
;
;
[SdSelectFolder-0]
Result=1
;
```

```
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;
;   Information provided in this section is relative to the dialog
;   with the title "Select Program Folder".
;
;******            szFolder = "Folder name"
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
szFolder=Software Distribution
;
;
;
[SdShowDlgEdit3-0]
Result=1
;
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;
;   THIS SECTION IS MEANINGFUL ONLY FOR THE FIRST INSTALLATION OF A
;   CLIENT
;
;   Information provided in this section is relative to the dialog
;   with the title "Client Configuration".
;
;******            szEdit1 = WorkStation Name
;******            szEdit2 = Target Address
;******            szEdit2 = TCP/IP Name
;
; WARNING  For all three fields a default value is provided.
;          If you want use them, write DEFAULT as field value.
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
szEdit1=DEFAULT
szEdit2=DEFAULT
szEdit3=DEFAULT
;
;
;
[SdShowDlgEdit2-0]
Result=1
;
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;
;   THIS SECTION IS MEANINGFUL ONLY FOR THE FIRST INSTALLATION
;
;   Information provided in this section is relative to the dialog
;   with the title "Server Configuration".
;
```

```
;******            szEdit1 =  (installing a CLIENT)  Server WorkStation Name
;                              (installing a SERVER)  WorkStation Name
;
;******            szEdit2 =  (installing a CLIENT)  Server TCP/IP Name
;                              (installing a SERVER)  TCP/IP Name
;
; WARNING  For both these two fields a default value is provided.
;          If you want use them write DEFAULT as field value.
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
szEdit1=luigi
szEdit2=zico
;
;
;
[AskOptions-3]
;
Result=1
;
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;
;   THIS SECTION IS MEANINGFUL ONLY FOR THE FIRST INSTALLATION EITHER OF A
;   CLIENT OR A SERVER
;
;   Information provided in this section is relative to the dialog
;   with the title "Start Product Selection".
;
;******            Sel-0 = Automatic Startup
;                  Sel-1 = Manual Startup
;
;                  Sel-X=0 means component NOT selected
;                  Sel-X=1 means component     selected
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
Sel-0=1
Sel-1=0
;
;
;
;
[SdFinishReboot-0]
Result=1
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;
;   Information provided in this section is relative to the dialog
;   with the title "Setup Complete".
;
;******            BootOption = 0 "No I will restart my computer later"
```

```
;                   BootOption = 3 "Yes I want to restart my computer now"
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
BootOption=3
;
;
```

8. Copy the following files from the TME 10 Software Distribution for Windows NT Version 3.51 CD-ROM to the directory `D:\I386` on SERVER1:

   ```
   FNDPINST.EXE
   FNDRM.EXE
   FNDPRIST.EXE
   MSVCRT20.DLL
   FNDSLEEP.EXE
   ```

9. Create an `NTCLIENT.CMD` file at the directory `d:\I386` on SERVER1, as follows:

   ```
   c:\winnt35\pristine\fndsleep 15
   net use k: \\server1\nvdma
   c:\winnt35\pristine\fndrm PristineService
   start k:\setup.exe -s
   del c:\winnt35\pristine\*.exe
   del c:\winnt35\pristine\*.dll
   del c:\winnt35\pristine\*.cmd
   ```

10. Use the Windows NT Version 3.51 Resource Kit (Windows NT Version 3.51 Setup Manager) or the `UNATTEND.TXT` sample file in directory `d:\I386` to create the answer file for the Windows NT Version 3.51 unattended installation.

    In this scenario, the following answer file, `CLIENT12.ANS`, has been used. Use only the Notepad editor to modify this file.

```
[Unattended]
Method = "express"
ConfirmHardware = "no"
Win31Upgrade = "no"
TargetPath = "\winnt35"
NtUpgrade = "no"
[GuiUnattended]
!SetupApplications = "no"
!DetachedProgram = "c:\winnt35\pristine\fndpinst.exe"
!Arguments = "c:\winnt35\pristine <pristine TCP/IP hostname>"
!AdvServerType = SERVERNT
!TimeZone = "(GMT) Greenwich Mean Time; Dublin, Edinburgh, London"
!SetupNetwork = "yes"
[UserData]
!FullName = "client12"
!OrgName = "birillo & co."
!ComputerName = "CLIENT12"
!ProductId = "1111111XX111"
[LicenseFilePrintData]
```

```
!AutoMode = PerServer
!AutoUsers = 10
[DomainData]
!AutoDomain = "NTDOM1"
[TransportData]
!InstallNWLink = "0"
!InstallNetBEUI = "1"
!InstallTCPIP = "1"
```

a. Add a carriage return after the last entry in the file, to return the cursor to the left margin.

   Note: In this sample file the pristine TCP/IP host name, `CLIENT12`, is used as the Computer Name for the pristine machine. This is done so that the installation program will configure the pristine machine, using the computer name as the pristine TCP/IP hostname.

11. For the pristine scenario to run successfully, do not modify the suggested values for the following:

    - DetachedProgram
    - Arguments
    - TargetPath

12. To configure TCP/IP on the pristine client, copy the file `\I386\IPINFO.INF` to \I386\CLIENT12\IPINFO.INF.

    Use a different subdirectory name each time you run the pristine scenario for a different pristine client machine.

13. Modify `\I386\CLIENT12\IPINFO.INF` by inserting the following information for the pristine machine. Search for the section `[DefaultIPINFO]`.

    - IP address
    - SubnetMask
    - DefaultGateway

14. Rename the file `\I386\IPINFO.INF` to `\I386\IPINFO.BAK`.

    Note: If you run the pristine scenario for more than one workstation, you must create a different `\I386\<hostname>\IPINFO.INF` file for each workstation.

15. Update the file `\I386\HOSTS` with the IP addresses and host names that you plan to use in your network. As a minimum, add:

    - Preparation site
    - TME 10 Software Distribution server
    - Host name of the pristine machine

      At the end of the pristine installation, you can customize your TCP/IP in order to enable the domain name service (DNS) for host name resolution.

    At present, there is a problem with the Windows NT Version 3.51 installation program. It will pause to ask for DHCP information even though you are not upgrading from Windows NT Version 3.51, Version 3.1.

16. Enter the following DHCP Configuration information, to prevent the Windows NT Version 3.51 installation program from pausing during the installation process:
    a. Rename \I386\OEMNXPTC.IN_ to \I386\OEMNXPTC.BAK
    b. Use the `EXPAND.EXE` command located in the directory `%SystemRoot%\SYSTEM32` to expand the file `\I386\OEMNXPTC.IN_` to `\I386\OEMNXPTC.INF`.
    c. Use Notepad to edit the file `OEMNXPTC.INF`. Search for `[InstallOption]`, and then search for the following code fragment:

```
ifstr(i) $(!STF_GUI_UNATTENDED) == YES
    set EnableDHCPFlag = 1
endif
ifstr(i) $(EnableDHCPFlag) == ""
    set EnableDHCPFlag = 0
endif
```

    d. Modify the second line, setting `EnableDHCPFlag` to **0**, as follows:

```
ifstr(i) $(!STF_GUI_UNATTENDED) == YES
    set EnableDHCPFlag = 0
endif
ifstr(i) $(EnableDHCPFlag) == ""
    set EnableDHCPFlag = 0
endif
```

17. Share the directories (Share name=NVDMA) `D:\NVDMA` and (Share name=I386) `D:\I386` in read-only mode to the group `Everyone`.
18. Use the Server Manager item in the Administrative Tools group to add CLIENT12 to domain NTDOM1.
19. Select **Windows NT Version 3.51 Workstation or Server** as the Computer Type.
20. In order to allow the pristine machine, `CLIENT12`, to share files in the directory `D:\NVDMA` on SERVER1 after the Windows NT Version 3.51 installation has completed on the pristine machine, you must perform the following operations on SERVER1:
    a. Start the registry editor by entering the command `REGEDT32.EXE`.

       Note: Be careful when you use REGEDT32 not to change any keys that are not specified here. Changing keys by mistake could request a Windows NT Version 3.51 reinstallation.

    b. From HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE select:

```
\SYSTEM
  \CurrentControlSet
    \Services
      \LanmanServer
        \Parameters
```

c. From the Edit menu, select **Add Value**.

d. In the Value Name field, write **RestrictNullSessAccess**.

When the pristine installation is complete, delete `RestrictNullSessAccess` to avoid a security exposure. `RestrictNullSessAccess` allows all pristine machines that are connected to SERVER1 to share files.

e. In the Data Type field, select **REG_DWORD** and then select **OK**.

f. In the DWORD editor field enter **0**, and then select **OK**.

g. Exit REGEDIT32, and then shut down and restart Windows NT Version 3.51

21. Copy the file `\I386\DOSNET.INF` to the directory `D:\I386\<pristine hostname>.INF`.

22. Use Notepad to edit the file `D:\I386\<pristine hostname>.INF` and make the following changes starting from the first column:

a. Search for the key [Directories], and add the following statement:

```
d2 = \<pristine hostname>
```

b. Search for the key [Files], and add the following statements in alphabetical order:

```
d1,FNDPINST.EXE
d1,FNDPRIST.EXE
d1,FNDSLEEP.EXE
d1,FNDRM.EXE
d1,MSVCRT20.DLL
d1,NTCLIENT.CMD
```

c. Search for the key [Files], and the "d1,IPINFO.INF" string.

d. Change `d1,IPINFO.INF` to `d2,IPINFO.INF`.

Note: Repeat the two previous steps (copying and editing) for each pristine machine on which you are installing TME 10 Software Distribution

23. Copy `D:\I386\TXTSETUP.SIF` to `D:\I386\TXTSETUP.BAK` to create a backup.

24. Use Notepad to edit the file `D:\I386\TXTSETUP.SIF` and make the following changes starting from the first column:

- Search for the key [WinntDirectories], and add this statement:

```
19 = pristine
```

- Search for the key [Files], and add the following statements at the end of the files that are listed:

```
fndpinst.exe = dx,d20,,19,0,0
fndprist.exe = dx,d20,,19,0,0
fndsleep.exe = dx,d20,,19,0,0
fndrm.exe    = dx,d20,,19,0,0
msvcrt20.dll = dx,d20,,19,0,0
ntclient.cmd = dx,d20,,19,0,0
```

Formatting the Startup Diskette at the PS/2 DOS Machine

Perform the following steps to format the diskette:

1. Insert the blank diskette in drive A of a PS/2 that is running either MS-DOS or IBM DOS.
2. Enter the command `<format a: /s>`, to format the diskette and to copy hidden system files.
3. Copy the files `FDISK.COM` and `FORMAT.COM` from the PS/2 DOS directory to the diskette.

Preparing the Startup Diskette at SERVER1

Perform the following steps to prepare the diskette. Note that you must have administrator authority to prepare the diskette.

1. At SERVER1, insert the diskette in drive A, and select the **Network Administration Group** icon.
2. Double-click on **Network Client Administrator**.
3. Select **Make Network Installation Start Disk**, and then **Continue**.

   The Share Network Client Installation Files window appears.
4. Select **Share Files** to enable the Path field.
5. In the Path field, type **<c:\clients>**.
6. In the Share Name field, type **clients**, and then select **OK**.

   The Target Workstation Configuration window appears.
7. Select the **IBM Token Ring 4/16Mbs** Network Adapter Card, and then select **OK**.

   The Network Startup Disk Configuration window appears.
8. Enter **guest** twice, once in the Computer Name field and once in the User Name field.

   Make no change to the Domain Name field, because the default domain is the domain of SERVER1.
9. Select **NetBEUI** as the Network Protocol.
10. Select **A:** as the Destination Path, and then select **OK**.

    The Confirm Network Disk Configuration panel appears.
11. Select **OK**.

    If you want to create more than one pristine diskette, use a different Computer Name for each diskette. If you use the same name, the workstation will not able to log on to the domain because there is a duplicate Computer Name in the network.
12. Exit from the Network Client Administrator utility after it has transferred the network files onto the diskette.

If you use a Pentium machine as the pristine machine, you may have problems if you use the Adapter Drivers that the Network Client Administrator utility copies to the directory A:\NET.

13. To avoid these problems, copy the following files to the directory a:\NET:

```
IBMTOK.DOS
IBMTOK.NIF
LT2.MSG
```

Note: These files are contained in the directory \DOS on the diskette IBM Auto 16/4 Token Ring MC Adapter Driver/LSP. This diskette supplied when you buy a Pentium machine with a Token-Ring adapter.

14. In order to make the pristine process unattended, as far as possible, you can use the following keystroke files to create only one FAT partition on the C: drive of the pristine machine:

```
FDISK.KSF           FORMAT.KSF

   1                    Y
   1                    PRISTINE
   Y
<new line>
```

You can partition your pristine machine in a different way by specifying different options in the above files.

15. Edit the file A:\AUTOEXEC.BAT, and comment out all the statements. Then write the following statements in the file:

```
IF EXIST fdisk.ksf GOTO LB1
copy check.key fdisk.ksf
del check.key
format c: < format.ksf
GOTO LB2

:LB1
ren fdisk.ksf check.key
fdisk < check.key

:LB2


path=a:\;a:\net
a:\net\net start
net use k: \\SERVER1\I386
```

Note: If you want to partition and to format the disk by yourself, write only the last three statements (shown above) in the AUTOEXEC.BAT file:

16. Create the following CFG.BAT file:

```
@echo off
@echo NT 3.51 Pristine Installation
if not "%1" == "" goto RUN
@echo "Uncorrect syntax - usage: cfg <hostname>"
goto END
:RUN
@echo on
k:\winnt /u:k:\%1.ans /s:k:\ /i:%1.inf /b
:END
```

Starting the Pristine Machine

1. Insert the startup diskette in pristine machine drive A, and power on.
2. The `NET START` command will ask you the following three fields:
   - User name
   - Password
   - Create a password list

   Select **Enter** to answer each question.
3. Enter the following command from the command line prompt: `CFG <hostname>`
4. When the Windows NT Version 3.51 unattended procedure begins to copy the remote files, remove the diskette from drive A.

   The workstation will reboot four times during the installation process.
5. After the second reboot, during the Adapter Detection segment, the unattended installation program will prompt you for the Network Address Adapter Card.

   Press enter to skip the request.
6. After the third reboot, the Windows NT Version 3.51 operating system will allow you to log on. If you log on, you can observe the TME 10 Software Distribution Unattended Installation process. At the end of the installation, the workstation will reboot automatically without any notification to you. Therefore, you have to log on again.
7. After the fourth reboot, the machine is configured to TME 10 Software Distribution Server and is ready to use as a TME 10 Software Distribution Client for Windows NT Version 3.51.
8. When you logon the first time after the pristine installation, enter the following information in the first two input fields on the window:
   - `administrator`
   - `<computer name>`

   You can leave the `password` field blank.

Note: The TME 10 Software Distribution installation program is able to create a TME 10 Software Distribution group only if a user is logged on to the machine during the installation process. If no user logs on after the second reboot, no group is created.

Starting the Pristine Machine

When you log on to the workstation for the first time after the installation, you must run the utility `crtgroup.exe`, in <product_dir>\bin to create the group.

When you log on to the pristine machine for the first time, define a password for the administrator.

Chapter 6. Pristine Installation Scenario for a Windows NT 4.0 Client

This scenario explains how to install the Microsoft Windows NT operating system and the TME 10 Software Distribution Client for Windows NT on a pristine machine in unattended mode. After the installation, the pristine machine functions as a Windows NT server or workstation with the TME 10 Software Distribution Client for Windows NT running on it.

To complete this pristine installation, you must perform the following tasks:

- Copy the source files for the Windows NT 4.0 operating system onto a Windows NT machine named, for example, SRVNT4
- Copy the source files for the TME 10 Software Distribution Client CD onto SRVNT4
- Prepare a startup diskette for the pristine client machine
- Use the startup diskette to set up the pristine machine CLIPSNT4 and connect it to SRVNT4.

Note: To run this scenario, the user must be logged on with administrator authority.

Environment

- Machine that is named, for example, SRVNT4.

  SRVNT4 has Windows NT 4.0 Server installed and uses the TCP/IP and NetBEUI protocols. It is used as the preparation site and the image repository. If SRVNT4 is in a NT Domain, it is installed as a stand-alone server in domain NTDOM1.

- Machine that is named, for example, CLIPSNT4.

  In this scenario, CLIPSNT4 is the machine which will be configured as a TME 10 Software Distribution for Windows NT client.

- Machine that has DOS installed, and is used to transfer the DOS system to a diskette.

SRVNT4 and CLIPSNT4 are in the same domain or workgroup, NTDOM1. They are connected by NetBEUI or TCP/IP during the pristine installation, and by TCP/IP after the installation.

Hardware Requirements

- CD-ROM that contains the Server Based Setup program for Windows NT 4.0 installation
- 1 CD-ROM that contains the source files for the TME 10 Software Distribution Client for Windows NT
- 1 blank high-density diskette

- Memory

  The following are the minimum RAM requirements:

  - 64 MB at the server (128 MB improves performance)
  - 64 MB at the client (32 MB is the minimum)
  - 640 KB at the DOS machine

- Disk space
  - 95 MB at the server for Windows NT 4.0 Workstation.
  - 95 MB at the server for Windows NT 4.0 Server.
  - 45 MB at the server for the TME 10 Software Distribution Client for Windows NT
  - 150 MB at the client for Windows NT 4.0 Workstation and the TME 10 Software Distribution Client for Windows NT
  - 200 MB at the client for Windows NT 4.0 Server and the TME 10 Software Distribution Client for Windows NT.

Software Requirements

- The installation files for the TME 10 Software Distribution Client for Windows NT on CD-ROM
- The installation files for Windows NT 4.0 Server or Workstation on CD-ROM
- MS-DOS or IBM-DOS 6.0 or higher for the boot floppy
- Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 *Resource Kit*.

  The *Resource Kit* is required only if you use the Windows NT Setup Manager to perform the pristine installation. You do not need it if you use and modify the `UNATTEND.TXT` file to create `CLIPSNT4.ANS` to perform the pristine installation.

Communication Protocols

The following communication protocols are embedded in and supported by Windows NT 4.0:

- TCP/IP
- NetBEUI

The NetBEUI or TCP/IP protocol is used when you run this installation scenario.

When the pristine installation is complete, the TME 10 Software Distribution client is configured with both NetBEUI and TCP/IP. TCP/IP is the preferred communication protocol.

Warning

DOS requires between 450 and 500 MB of unallocated free memory. If the operating system does not have this space available after the installation of both the scenario and the network drivers, the TME 10 Software Distribution setup program will fail to run.

A solution to this may be to use the smaller NetBEUI protocol instead of TCP/IP

Note: In this scenario, the TCP/IP host name also matches the computer name of the pristine machine.

Copying the Files from the CD-ROMs to SRVNT4

Perform the following steps to copy the source files for Windows NT 4.0 and the TME 10 Software Distribution Client for Windows NT to SRVNT4:

1. Create the following directories and subdirectories on the root directory on SRVNT4:
   - `C:\SDPRISTINE\WNT4_WST` (for Windows NT 4.0 Workstation installation files)
   - `C:\SDPRISTINE\WNT4_SRV` (for Windows NT 4.0 Server installation files)
   - `C:\SDPRISTINE\NVDMA` (for Software Distribution Client installation files).

   Note: In the above example C: is the default drive, and SDPRISTINE is the default directory. These defaults can be changed.
2. Create the directory `CLIENTS` in the root directory on the C: drive on SRVNT4.
3. Use either Windows Explorer or the `COPY` command to copy the directory `clients\msclient`, with all its subdirectories, from the Windows NT 4.0 Server CD-ROM to the directory `c:\clients\msclient` on SRVNT4.
4. Copy all the files for the Windows NT 4.0 Workstation installation from the directory `I386` on the CD-ROM to the directory `C:\SDPRISTINE\WNT4_WST` on SRVNT4.
5. Copy all the files for the Windows NT 4.0 Server installation from the directory `I386` on the CD-ROM to the directory `C:\SDPRISTINE\WNT4_SRV` on SRVNT4.
6. Copy the source files for the TME 10 Software Distribution Client for Windows NT from the CD-ROM NVDMA to the directory `C:\SDPRISTINE\NVDMA` on SRVNT4.
7. From the directory "pristnt" on the TME 10 Software Distribution for Windows NT CD-ROM, copy the following files from to the directory `"C:\SDPRISTINE\WNT4_WST"` and `"C:\SDPRISTINE\WNT4_SRV"` on SRVNT4:

   ```
   FNDPINST.EXE
   FNDSLEEP.EXE
   NTCLIENT.CMD
   CLIPSNT4.ANS
   ```
8. Modify the`"NTCLIENT.CMD"` file in the directories `"C:\SDPRISTINE\WNT4_WST"` and `"C:\SDPRISTINE\WNT4_SRV"` on SRVNT4, inserting the correct server name:

```
@echo off
c:\winnt4\pristine\fndsleep 25
echo Start installation Software Distribution Client

net use k: \\SRVNT4\nvdma pristine /user:SRVNT4\pristine /PERSISTENT:NO
            ↑↑↑↑↑↑                      ↑↑↑↑↑↑

k:\setup -s  -fk:\setup.ins -f1%Systemroot%\pristine\setup.ISS -f2k: ►
\setup.log
del %Systemroot%\pristine\*.exe
del %Systemroot%\pristine\*.cmd
del %Systemroot%\pristine\*.iss
cd ..
rd pristine
echo End installation Software Distribution Client
:end
```

9. Use the Windows NT Resource Kit (Windows NT 4.0 Setup Manager) or a text editor to modify the "CLIPSNT4.ANS" sample file in the directory "C:\SDPRISTINE\WNT4_WST" and "C:\SDPRISTINE\WNT4_SRV" to create the answer file for the Windows NT 4.0 unattended installation (for further information on doing this, consult the Q155197 - HOWTO: *Unattended Setup Parameters for Unattend.txt* file which can be found in the Microsoft MSDN documentation).

   Note: In this scenario, the following answer file, "CLIPSNT4.ANS", has been used. Use only the Notepad editor or an equivalent text editor to modify this file.

```
[Unattended]
OemPreinstall = yes
NoWaitAfterTextMode = 1
NoWaitAfterGUIMode = 1
FileSystem = LeaveAlone
ExtendOEMPartition = 0
ConfirmHardware = no
NtUpgrade = no
Win31Upgrade = no
TargetPath = "\winnt4"
OverwriteOemFilesOnUpgrade = no
KeyboardLayout = "Italian (142)"
OemSkipEula=Yes

[UserData]
FullName = "ClipsXXX-pristine"
OrgName = "Tivoli-Systems"
ComputerName = CLIPSNT4
ProductId = "XXXXX-OEM-XXXXXXX-XXXXX"

[GuiUnattended]
OemSkipWelcome = 1
OEMBlankAdminPassword = 1
TimeZone = "(GMT+01:00) Berlin, Stockholm, Rome, Bern, Brussels,
            Vienna"
DetachedProgram = c:\winnt4\pristine\fndpinst.exe
Arguments = "c:\winnt4\pristine"

[Display]
ConfigureAtLogon = 0
BitsPerPel = 8
XResolution = 800
YResolution = 600
VRefresh = 75
AutoConfirm = 1

[Network]
InstallAdapters = SelectedAdaptersSection
InstallProtocols = ProtocolsSection
InstallServices = ServicesSection
DoNotInstallInternetServer = Yes
JoinWorkgroup = NTWRK1

[SelectedAdaptersSection]
AdptTokenRing = OEMAdapterParamSection, \$OEM$\NET\trp
```

Figure 47 (Part 1 of 2). CLIPSNT4.ANS sample file

```
[OEMAdapterParamSection]

[ProtocolsSection]
TC = TCParamSection
NBF = NBFParamSection

[TCParamSection]
DHCP = yes

[NBFParamSection]

[ServicesSection]
```

Figure 47 (Part 2 of 2). CLIPSNT4.ANS sample file

a. Use Notepad or an equivalent text editor to modify the file "CLIPSNT4.ANS". Add a carriage return after the last entry in the file to return the cursor to the left margin.

b. Note that in this sample file the pristine TCP/IP host name, "CLIPSNT4", is used as the Computer Name for the pristine machine. This is done so that the installation program will configure the pristine machine, using the computer name as the pristine TCP/IP hostname.

10. For the pristine scenario to run successfully, do not modify the suggested values for the following:

```
[GuiUnattended]
DetachedProgram = c:\winnt4\pristine\fndpinst.exe
Arguments = "c:\winnt4\pristine"
[Unattended]
TargetPath = "\winnt4"
```

    Where TargetPath is the system directory where NT 4.0 is installed (%SystemRoot%). DetachedProgram is the path name of program to run for the installation of the client Software Distribution and its Arguments:

    "c:\winnt4\pristine" is the pristine files path

11. With User Manager create a new user "pristine" with password "pristine" in the group "Users".

12. Share the directories (Share name=WNT4_WST) "C:\SDPRISTINE\WNT4_WST" in Read-Only mode to the group "Everyone" and Full-Control for the user "pristine".

13. Share the directories (Share name=WNT4_SRV) "C:\SDPRISTINE\WNT4_SRV" in Read-Only mode to the group "Everyone" and Full-Control for the user "pristine".

14. Share the directories (Share name=NVDMA) "C:\SDPRISTINE\NVDMA" in Read-Only mode to the group "Everyone" and Full-Control for the user "pristine".

15. Copy the file "WNT4_SRV\DOSNET.INF" to the directory "WNT4_SRV\SDPRTNET.INF.SDP" and copy the file "WNT4_WST\DOSNET.INF" to the directory "WNT4_WST\DOSNET.INF.SDP" to create a backup.

16. Use Notepad or an equivalent text editor to edit the file "WNT4_SRV\DOSNET.INF" and "WNT4_WST\DOSNET.INF" make the following changes starting from the first column:

    - Search for the key [Files], and add the following statements in the first point after the key label

      ```
      d1,FNDSLEEP.EXE
      d1,FNDPINST.EXE
      d1,NTCLIENT.CMD
      d1,SETUP.ISS

      example:

      [Files]
      d1,FNDSLEEP.EXE
      d1,FNDPINST.EXE
      d1,NTCLIENT.CMD
      d1,SETUP.ISS
      d1,_default.pif ← (the original declaration begins here)
      ...
      ```

17. Copy "WNT4_SRV\TXTSETUP.SIF" to "WNT4_SRV\ TXTSETUP.SIF.SDP" and "WNT4_WST \TXTSETUP.SIF" to "WNT4_WST\TXTSETUP.SDP" to create a backup of both files.

18. Use Notepad or an equivalent text editor to edit the file "TXTSETUP.SIF" and make the following changes starting from the first column:

    - Search for the key [WinntDirectories], and add a statement to increase the number value of one:

      In the Workstation version of "TXTSETUP.SIF", the last number is 26. In the Server version of "TXTSETUP.SIF", the last number is 62.

      For the Workstation version, the new entry should read:

      ```
      27 = pristine
      ```

      For the Server version, the new entry should read:

      ```
      63 = pristine
      ```

    - Search for the key [SourceDiskFiles].

      For the Workstation version of "TXTSETUP.SIF", add the following statements in the first line after the key label:

      ```
      fndsleep.exe = 1,,,,,,,27,0,0
      fndpinst.exe = 1,,,,,,,27,0,0
      ntclient.cmd = 1,,,,,,,27,0,0
      setup.iss    = 1,,,,,,,27,0,0
      ```

      For the Server version of "TXTSETUP.SIF", add the following statements in the first line after the key label:

```
fndsleep.exe = 1,,,,,,,63,0,0
fndpinst.exe = 1,,,,,,,63,0,0
ntclient.cmd = 1,,,,,,,63,0,0
setup.iss    = 1,,,,,,,63,0,0
```

19. Create the subdirectories `WNT4_SRV\$OEM$` and `WNT4_WST\$OEM$`. Copy from the directory `"pristnt\$OEM$"` to each subdirectory, the autologon files :

    ```
    autolog.inf
    cmdlines.txt
    ```

    Note: The above files are located on the TME 10 Software Distribution For Windows NT CD-ROM.

    The following is an example file autologo.inf:

    ```
    [Version]
    Signature = "$Windows NT$"

    [DefaultInstall]
    AddReg = AddReg

    [AddReg]
    HKLM,"SOFTWARE\Microsoft\Windows NT\CurrentVersion\Winlogon", ►
    "DefaultUserName",,"administrator"
    HKLM,"SOFTWARE\Microsoft\Windows NT\CurrentVersion\Winlogon", ►
    "DefaultPassword",,""
    HKLM,"SOFTWARE\Microsoft\Windows NT\CurrentVersion\Winlogon", ►
    "AutoAdminLogon",,"1"
    ```

    If you have to logon in a NT Domain add a new line:

    ```
    HKLM,"SOFTWARE\Microsoft\Windows NT\CurrentVersion\Winlogon", ►
    "DefaultDomainName",,"DomainName"
    ```

    Where `"DomainName"` is the name of the NT Domain.

    The following is a sample file cmdlines.txt:

    ```
    [Commands]
    "rundll32 setupapi,InstallHinfSection DefaultInstall 128 .\autolog.inf"
    ```

20. After that create in `"$OEM$"` a new subdirectory `"net"` (`"WNT4_SRV\$OEM$\NET"` and `"WNT4_WST\$OEM$\NET"`) into which you copy the network card drivers (for further information on doing this, consult the Q155197 - HOWTO: *Unattended Setup Parameters for Unattend.txt* file which can be found in the Microsoft MSDN documentation).

    Create a subdirectory for each network card and make a copy of the driver files. Enter the directory and path in either the Windows NT Setup Manager application or the unattended response file `CLIPSNT4.ANS`. The section to modify is shown below:

```
[Network]
InstallAdapters = SelectedAdaptersSection
InstallProtocols = ProtocolsSection
InstallServices = ServicesSection
DoNotInstallInternetServer = Yes
JoinWorkgroup = NTWRK1

[SelectedAdaptersSection]
AdptTokenRing = OEMAdapterParamSection, \$OEM$\NET\trp
```

21. (This part is only intended for installation in a domain) Use the Server Manager item in the Administrative Tools group to add the server CLIPSNT4 to the domain NTDOM1. Select Windows NT WORKSTATION OR SERVER as the Computer Type.
22. Customize the unattended installation file `NVDMA\SETUP.ISS`:
    a. Choose the TME 10 Software Distribution components you want to install and modify `SETUP.ISS`:
       - Base client
       - Graphical user interface
       - Documentation
       - HW/SW discovery
       - Mobile client.
    b. Enable the boot option.

       Note: The boot option is mandatory. It enables the pristine target to reboot automatically during the installation process.

    The following is a sample `NVDMA\SETUP.ISS` installation file:

```
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;;                                                                  ;;
;;  SETUP.ISS response file for a silent Installation.              ;;
;;                                                                  ;;
;;  copy SETUP.ISS on your private directory and invoke SETUP as    ;;
;;  shown:                                                          ;;
;;                                                                  ;;
;;     SETUP  -f1c:\mydir\setup.iss  -s             ;;
;;                                                                  ;;
;;  Check the results of the silent installation in the log         ;;
;;  file created by SETUP (through the -f2 option) and in the       ;;
;;  file named INSTLOG placed in the installation directory.        ;;
;;                                                                  ;;
;;  Only the fields identified by the string ";******" can be       ;;
;;  modified.                                                       ;;
;;  All the other fields MUST not be modified.                      ;;
;;                                                                  ;;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;
;
[InstallSHIELD Silent]
Version=v3.00.000
File=Response File
[Application]
Name=Software Distribution
Version=3.1.5
Company=Tivoli
[DlgOrder]
Dlg0=Welcome-0
Dlg1=AskOptions-0
Dlg2=AskOptions-1
Dlg3=AskOptions-2
Dlg4=SdComponentDialog-0
Dlg5=SdSelectFolder-0
Dlg6=AskOptions-3
Dlg7=SdShowDlgEdit3-0
Dlg8=SdShowDlgEdit3-1
Dlg9=SdShowDlgEdit3-2
Dlg10=SdShowDlgEdit2-0
Dlg11=SdShowDlgEdit2-1
Dlg12=SdShowDlgEdit2-2
Dlg13=SdShowDlgEdit2-3
Dlg14=SdShowDlgEdit1-0
Dlg15=SdShowDlgEdit1-1
Dlg16=SdShowDlgEdit1-2
Dlg17=SdShowDlgEdit1-3
Dlg18=AskOptions-4
Dlg19=SdFinishReboot-0
```

Figure 48 (Part 1 of 14). Sample NVDMA\SETUP.ISS installation file

```
Count=20
[Welcome-0]
Result=1
[AskOptions-0]
;
Result=1
;
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;                                                                       ;
; THIS SECTION IS MEANINGFUL ONLY FOR MIGRATION FROM A PREVIOUS RELEASE ;
;                                                                       ;
;   Information provided in this section is relative to the dialog     ;
;   having "Select Migration" title.                                    ;
;                                                                       ;
;******            Sel-0 "YES"                                          ;
;******            Sel-1 "NO"                                           ;
;                                                                       ;
;                  Sel-X=0 means component is NOT selected           ;
;                  Sel-X=1 means component is     selected           ;
;                                                                       ;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
Sel-0=1
Sel-1=0
;
;
;
[AskOptions-1]
;
Result=1
;
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;                                                                    ;
;   Information provided in this section is relative to the dialog   ;
;   having "Select Installation" title.                              ;
;                                                                    ;
;******            Sel-0 "Software Distribution CLIENT"              ;
;******            Sel-1 "Software Distribution SERVER"              ;
;                                                                    ;
;                  Sel-X=0 means component is NOT selected        ;
;                  Sel-X=1 means component is     selected       ;
;                                                                   ;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
```

Figure 48 (Part 2 of 14). Sample NVDMA\SETUP.ISS installation file

```
Sel-0=1
Sel-1=0
;
;
;
[AskOptions-2]
;
Result=1
;
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;                                                                    ;
;   THIS SECTION IS MEANINGFUL ONLY FOR FUTURE RE-INSTALLATION       ;
;                                                                    ;
;   Information provided in this section is relative to the dialog   ;
;   having "Reinstall Selection" title.                              ;
;                                                                    ;
;******            Sel-0 "Update the current installed components"   ;
;******            Sel-1 "Install additional components"             ;
;                                                                    ;
;                  Sel-X=0 means component is NOT selected       ;
;                  Sel-X=1 means component is     selected       ;
;                                                                    ;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
Sel-0=0
Sel-1=1
;
;
;
[SdComponentDialog-0]
;
Result=1
Component-type=string
;
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;                                                                   ;
; Information provided in this section is relative to the dialog    ;
; having "Select Components" title.                                 ;
;                                                                   ;
;******   Component-count "equal to the number of elements listed   ;
;                                    below (Component-x)"           ;
;                                                                   ;
;******   Component-x     "equal to the option you want to install" ;
;                                                                   ;
;                                                                   ;
```

Figure 48 (Part 3 of 14). Sample NVDMA\SETUP.ISS installation file

```
; WARNING: Use the appropriate Component-.. keys                    ;
;          (SERVER or CLIENT SECTION);                              ;
;          depending on what you want to install.                   ;
;          The numbers following Component-.. must start with 0 and ;
;          must be sequential.                                      ;
;                                                                   ;
;          Example:                                                 ;
;            If you want install a client with the components 0, 1, ;
;            and 3, the correct selection is:                       ;
;                                                                   ;
;                     Component-count=3                          ;
;                     Component-0=Distribution Client Base       ;
;                     Component-1=Distribution GUI               ;
;                     Component-2=HW/SW Discovery           ;
;                                                                   ;
;            follows an example of a typical WRONG selection:       ;
;                                                                   ;
;                     Component-count=3                          ;
;                     Component-0=Distribution Client Base       ;
;                     Component-1=Distribution GUI               ;
;                     Component-3=HW/SW Discovery           ;      ;
;                                                                   ;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;
; SERVER SECTION
;
;Component-count=5
;Component-0=Distribution Server Base
;Component-1=Distribution GUI
;Component-2=Distribution Documentation
;Component-3=HW/SW Discovery
;Component-4=Distribution Server Remote Communication
;
;
;
; CLIENT SECTION
;
Component-count=3
Component-0=Distribution Client Base
Component-1=Distribution GUI
Component-2=Distribution Documentation
Component-3=HW/SW Discovery
Component-4=Distribution Client Mobile
;
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;                                                                                 ;
```

Figure 48 (Part 4 of 14). Sample NVDMA\SETUP.ISS installation file

```
; THIS SECTION IS MEANINGFUL ONLY FOR THE FIRST INSTALLATION EITHER OF A ;
; CLIENT OR A SERVER.                                                     ;
;                                                                         ;
;   Information provided in this section is relative to the dialog        ;
;   having "Select Components" title.                                     ;
;                                                                         ;
;******  szDir = "Target Directory where the product is installed"        ;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
szDir=C:\SOFTDIST
;
;
;
[SdSelectFolder-0]
Result=1
;
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;                                                                       ;
; Information provided in this section is relative to the dialog ;
;   having "Select Program Folder" title.                               ;
;                                                                       ;
;******            szFolder = "Folder name"                            ;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
szFolder=TME 10 Software Distribution
;
;
;
[AskOptions-3]
;
Result=1
;
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;                                                                       ;
; THIS SECTION IS MEANINGFUL ONLY FOR THE FIRST INSTALLATION EITHER OF A ;
; CLIENT OR A SERVER                                                      ;
;                                                                         ;
;                                                                         ;
;   Information provided in this section is relative to the dialog        ;
;   having "Select Protocol" title.                                       ;
;                                                                         ;
```

Figure 48 (Part 5 of 14). Sample NVDMA\SETUP.ISS installation file

```
;******          Sel-0 "TCP/IP Protocol"                                  ;
;******          Sel-1 "NetBIOS Protocol"                                 ;
;******          Sel-2 "IPX Protocol"                                     ;
;                                                                         ;
;                Sel-X=0 means protocol NOT selected                    ;
;                Sel-X=1 means protocol     selected                    ;
;                                                                       ;
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
Sel-0=1
Sel-1=0
Sel-2=0
;
;
[SdShowDlgEdit3-0]
Result=1
;
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;                                                                    ;
;  THIS SECTION IS MEANINGFUL ONLY FOR THE FIRST INSTALLATION OF A  ;
;  CLIENT WHEN TCP PROTOCOL IS CHOSEN                               ;
;                                                                    ;
;   Information provided in this section is relative to the dialog  ;
;   having "Client Configuration" title.                             ;
;                                                                    ;
;******          szEdit1 = "WorkStation Name"                        ;
;******          szEdit2 = "Target Address"                          ;
;******          szEdit3 = "TCP/IP Name"                             ;
;                                                                    ;
; WARNING  for all these three fields a default value is provided   ;
;          if you want use them write DEFAULT as field value.       ;
;                                                                    ;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
szEdit1=clipsnt4
szEdit2=clipsnt4
szEdit3=clipsnt4
;
;
```

Figure 48 (Part 6 of 14). Sample NVDMA\SETUP.ISS installation file

```
;
[SdShowDlgEdit3-1]
Result=1
;
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;                                                                    ;
;  THIS SECTION IS MEANINGFUL ONLY FOR THE FIRST INSTALLATION OF A  ;
;  CLIENT WHEN THE NETBIOS PROTOCOL IS CHOSEN                       ;
;                                                                    ;
;   Information provided in this section is relative to the dialog  ;
;   having "Client Configuration" title.                             ;
;                                                                    ;
;******            szEdit1 = "WorkStation Name"                      ;
;******            szEdit2 = "Target Address"                        ;
;******            szEdit3 = "NetBIOS Name"                          ;
;                                                                    ;
; WARNING  for all these three fields a default value is provided   ;
;          if you want use them write DEFAULT as field value.       ;
;                                                                    ;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
```

Figure 48 (Part 7 of 14). Sample NVDMA\SETUP.ISS installation file

```
szEdit1=DEFAULT
szEdit2=DEFAULT
szEdit3=DEFAULT
;
;
[SdShowDlgEdit3-2]
Result=1
;
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;                                                                    ;
;   THIS SECTION IS MEANINGFUL ONLY FOR THE FIRST INSTALLATION OF A  ;
;   CLIENT WHEN IPX PROTOCOL IS CHOSEN                              ;
;                                                                    ;
;   Information provided in this section is relative to the dialog   ;
;   having "Client Configuration" title.                             ;
;                                                                    ;
;******            szEdit1 = "WorkStation Name"                      ;
;******            szEdit2 = "Target Address"                        ;
;******            szEdit3 = "IPX Name"                              ;
;                                                                    ;
; WARNING  for all these three fields a default value is provided    ;
;          if you want use them write DEFAULT as field value.        ;
;                                                                    ;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
szEdit1=DEFAULT
szEdit2=DEFAULT
szEdit3=DEFAULT
;
;
[SdShowDlgEdit2-0]
Result=1
;
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;                                                                    ;
;   THIS SECTION IS MEANINGFUL ONLY FOR THE FIRST INSTALLATION OF A  ;
;   CLIENT WHEN TCP    PROTOCOL IS CHOSEN                            ;
;                                                                    ;
;   Information provided in this section is relative to the dialog   ;
;   having "Server Configuration" title.                             ;
```

Figure 48 (Part 8 of 14). Sample NVDMA\SETUP.ISS installation file

```
;                                                                          ;
;******            szEdit1 =  "Server WorkStation Name"                   ;
;                                                                          ;
;******            szEdit2 =  "Server TCP/IP Name"                        ;
;                                                                          ;
;                                                                          ;
; WARNING  for all these two fields a default value is provided            ;
;          if you want use them write DEFAULT as field value.              ;
;                                                                          ;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
szEdit1=SRVNT4
szEdit2=SRVNT4
;
;
;
[SdShowDlgEdit2-1]
Result=1
;
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;                                                                          ;
;   THIS SECTION IS MEANINGFUL ONLY FOR THE FIRST INSTALLATION OF A         ;
;   CLIENT WHEN  NBI PROTOCOL IS CHOSEN                                   ;
;                                                                          ;
;   Information provided in this section is relative to the dialog         ;
;   having "Server Configuration" title.                                   ;
;                                                                          ;
;******            szEdit1 =  "Server WorkStation Name"                   ;
;                                                                          ;
;******            szEdit2 =  "Server NetBIOS Name"                       ;
;                                                                          ;
; WARNING  for all these two fields a default value is provided            ;
;          if you want use them write DEFAULT as field value.              ;
;                                                                          ;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
szEdit1=DEFAULT
szEdit2=DEFAULT
;
;
;
[SdShowDlgEdit2-2]
Result=1
```

Figure 48 (Part 9 of 14). Sample NVDMA\SETUP.ISS installation file

```
;
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;                                                                    ;
;   THIS SECTION IS MEANINGFUL ONLY FOR THE FIRST INSTALLATION OF A  ;
;   CLIENT WHEN IPX PROTOCOL IS CHOSEN                               ;
;                                                                    ;
;   Information provided in this section is relative to the dialog   ;
;   having "Server Configuration" title.                             ;
;                                                                    ;
;******            szEdit1 = "Server WorkStation Name"               ;
;                                                                    ;
;******            szEdit2 = "Server IPX Name"                       ;
;                                                                    ;
; WARNING  for all these two fields a default value is provided      ;
;          if you want use them write DEFAULT as field value.        ;
;                                                                    ;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
szEdit1=DEFAULT
szEdit2=DEFAULT
;
;
[SdShowDlgEdit2-3]
Result=1
;
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;                                                                    ;
;   THIS SECTION IS MEANINGFUL ONLY FOR THE FIRST INSTALLATION OF A  ;
;   SERVER.                                                          ;
;                                                                    ;
;   Information provided in this section is relative to the dialog   ;
;   having "Server Configuration" title.                             ;
;                                                                    ;
;******            szEdit1 = "WorkStation Name"                      ;
;                                                                    ;
;******            szEdit2 = "Target Address"                        ;
```

Figure 48 (Part 10 of 14). Sample NVDMA\SETUP.ISS installation file

```
;                                                                          ;
; WARNING  for all these two fields a default value is provided            ;
;          if you want use them write DEFAULT as field value.              ;
;                                                                          ;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
szEdit1=DEFAULT
szEdit2=DEFAULT
;
;
;
;
[SdShowDlgEdit1-0]
Result=1
;
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;                                                                          ;
; THIS SECTION IS MEANINGFUL ONLY FOR THE FIRST INSTALLATION OF A          ;
; SERVER WHEN TCP PROTOCOL IS CHOSEN                                       ;
;                                                                          ;
;   Information provided in this section is relative to the dialog         ;
;   having "Server Configuration" title.                                   ;
;                                                                          ;
;******            szEdit1 = "TCP/IP Name"                                ;
;                                                                          ;
; WARNING  for all these two fields a default value is provided            ;
;          if you want use them write DEFAULT as field value.              ;
;                                                                          ;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;
szEdit1=root
;
;
[SdShowDlgEdit1-1]
Result=1
;
;
;
```

Figure 48 (Part 11 of 14). Sample NVDMA\SETUP.ISS installation file

```
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;                                                                ;
; THIS SECTION IS MEANINGFUL ONLY FOR THE FIRST INSTALLATION OF A ;
; SERVER WHEN NBI PROTOCOL IS CHOSEN                             ;
;                                                                ;
; Information provided in this section is relative to the dialog ;
; having "Server Configuration" title.                           ;
;                                                                ;
;                                                                ;
;******            szEdit1 =  "NetBIOS Name"                     ;
;                                                                ;
;                                                                ;
; WARNING  for all these two fields a default value is provided  ;
;          if you want use them write DEFAULT as field value.    ;
;                                                                ;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
szEdit1=DEFAULT
;
[SdShowDlgEdit1-2]
Result=1
;
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;                                                                  ;
;  THIS SECTION IS MEANINGFUL ONLY FOR THE FIRST INSTALLATION OF A ;
;  SERVER WHEN IPX PROTOCOL IS CHOSEN                              ;
;                                                                  ;
;   Information provided in this section is relative to the dialog ;
;   having "Server Configuration" title.                           ;
;                                                                  ;
;******            szEdit1 = "IPX Name"                            ;
;                                                                  ;
; WARNING  for all these two fields a default value is provided    ;
;          if you want use them write DEFAULT as field value.      ;
```

Figure 48 (Part 12 of 14). Sample NVDMA\SETUP.ISS installation file

```
;                                                                    ;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
szEdit1=DEFAULT
;
;
[SdShowDlgEdit1-3]
Result=1
;
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;                                                                      ;
;   THIS SECTION IS MEANINGFUL ONLY FOR THE FIRST INSTALLATION         ;
;                                                                      ;
;   Information provided in this section is relative to the dialog     ;
;   having "Configuration" title.                                      ;
;                                                                      ;
;******            szEdit1 =  "FNDUSER environment variable value"    ;
;                                                                      ;
; WARNING  for all these two fields a default value is provided        ;
;          if you want use them write DEFAULT as field value.          ;
;                                                                      ;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
szEdit1=DEFAULT
;
;
;
[AskOptions-4]
;
Result=1
;
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;                                                                      ;
; THIS SECTION IS MEANINGFUL ONLY FOR THE FIRST INSTALLATION EITHER OF A ;
; CLIENT OR A SERVER                                                   ;
;                                                                      ;
;   Information provided in this section is realive to the dialog      ;
;   having "Start Product Selection" title.                            ;
;                                                                      ;
;******            Sel-0 = "Automatic Startup"                        ;
;                  Sel-1 = "Manual Startup"                           ;
;                                                                      ;
```

Figure 48 (Part 13 of 14). Sample NVDMA\SETUP.ISS installation file

```
;                  Sel-X=0 means component is NOT selected              ;
;                  Sel-X=1 means component is     selected              ;
;                                                                       ;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
Sel-0=1
Sel-1=0
;
;
;
;
[SdFinishReboot-0]
Result=1
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;                                                                       ;
;   Information provided in this section is relative to the dialog;
;   having "Setup Complete" title.                                      ;
;                                                                       ;
;******     BootOption = 0 "No I will restart my computer later"  ;
;          BootOption = 3 "Yes I want to restart my computer now";
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
BootOption=3
;
;
```

Figure 48 (Part 14 of 14). Sample NVDMA\SETUP.ISS installation file

Formatting the Startup Diskette at the DOS Machine

Perform the following steps to format the diskette:

1. Insert the blank diskette in **drive A** of a machine that is running either **MS-DOS** or **IBM DOS**.
2. Enter the command <**format a: /s**>, to format the diskette and to copy hidden system files; or <**format a:**> and then, once the format procedure is complete, <**sys a:**>
3. Copy the files `FDISK.COM` and `FORMAT.COM` from the **DOS** directory to the diskette.

Preparing the Startup Diskette at SRVNT4

Perform the following steps to prepare the diskette. Note that you must have administrator authority to prepare the diskette.

1. Run the **Network Client Administrator** program.
2. Select **Make Network Installation Start Disk**, and then **Continue**.

   The Share Network Client Installation Files window appears.

3. Select **Share Files** to enable the Path field.
4. In the Path field, type <**c:\clients**>.
5. In the Share Name field, type **clients**, and then select **OK**.

   The Target Workstation Configuration window appears.
6. Select the network card, for example the **IBM Token Ring 4/16MB Network Adapter Card**, and then select **OK**. If your network card is not listed, select a standard type, such as **NE2000**. Then, after the startup disk is created, modify it to utilise your specific network card drivers. This procedure is described in more detail in Step 12

   The Network Startup Disk Configuration window appears.
7. Enter **CLIPSNT4** in the Computer Name field and **PRISTINE** in the User Name field.

   The parameter you enter in the Domain Name field depends on the configuration of the Pristine Server. The server name, in this example SRVNT4, must be used when the Pristine Server is a Stand Alone NT 4.0 Server. However, if you are using a NT 4.0 Primary/Backup Domain Controller Server, it is also acceptable to enter the default domain name.
8. Select **TCP\IP** as the Network Protocol.

   Warning

   DOS requires between 450 and 500 MB of unallocated free memory. If the operating system does not have this space available after the installation of both the scenario and the network drivers, the TME 10 Software Distribution setup program will fail to run.

   A solution to this may be to use the smaller NetBEUI protocol instead of TCP/IP
9. Select **A:** as the Destination Path, and then select **OK**.

   The Confirm Network Disk Configuration panel appears.
10. Select **OK**.
11. Exit from the Network Client Administrator utility after it has transferred the network files onto the diskette.
12. Test the startup diskette. Once tested successfully, you can use the same diskette. Copy the diskette and modify the client name in the `system.ini` file for different client installations of the same type of computer.

    If you use the same name, the workstation will not be able to log on to the server/domain because there is a duplicate Computer Name in the network.

    If you do not want to test the startup diskette, go to step 13 on page 119. To test the diskette, modify the autoexec.bat file by changing the lines:

    ```
    a:\net\net start
    net use k: \\SRVNT4\CLIENTS
    ```

to:

```
a:\net\net logon pristine pristine /YES /S AVEPW:NO
net use k: \\SRVNT4.\WNT4_WST /persistent:no
k:
```

Insert the startup diskette in the A drive of the pristine machine and power on.

If the test is successful, at the end of the startup the pristine machine is on the network driver k:

Client connection errors can occur when drivers are specified incorrectly for the network card. This often happens when you specify a type of TokenRing adapter's driver instead of the specific adapter's driver. To correct this, copy the DOS driver on the adapters drivers diskettes (generally contained in the DOS directory on the diskette IBM 16\4 Token Ring Adapter) to: A:\NET directory:

```
IBMTRP.DOS
IBMTRP.NIF
LA1.MSG
```

If the name of the driver files differ from the original names, modify the Microsoft Network Client for DOS configuration files:

```
protocol.ini
system.ini
```

In the `protocol.ini` file change the line:

```
drivername=IBMTOK$
```

to

```
drivername=IBMTRP$
```

In the `system.ini` file change the line:

```
netcard=ibmtok.dos
```

to

```
netcard=ibmtrp.dos
```

Reboot the startup diskette on the pristine machine.

Note: Other types of network card can also be used. Copy the driver files for your network card to the A:\NET directory and modify the `netcard` and `drivername` statements in the `system.ini` and `protocol.ini` configuration files (as shown above).

13. In order to make the pristine process unattended, as far as possible, you can use the following keystroke files to create only one FAT16 partition on the C: drive of the pristine machine. The partition size can equal the size of the hard disk, up to a maximum of 2Gb:

```
FDISK.KSF          FORMAT.KSF

   1                  Y
   1                  <new line>
```

```
   Y
<new line>
```

You can partition your pristine machine differently by specifying different options for the above files.

You now need to modify the autoexec.bat file.

14. Edit the file A:\AUTOEXEC.BAT, and comment out the "net" statements.

    At the end of the file add the following new statements to connect to the server and run the operating system installation:

```
Path=a:\;a:\net
...
...
REM a:\net\net start
REM net use k: \\SRVNT4\CLIENTS
REM k:\MSCLIENT...

NET LOGON pristine pristine /YES /SAVEPW:NO
net use k: \\SRVNT4\WNT4_WST /persistent:no

copy SETUP.ISS k:\SETUP.ISS

k:\winnt /u:a:\clips.ans /s:k:\ /i:sdprtnet.inf /b
```

    If you want to partition and format the disk by yourself, enter only the preceding statements and jump to the next part.

    If you want to make the primary partition FAT16, insert the following statements in the first line:

```
IF EXIST fdisk.ksf GOTO LB1
copy check.key fdisk.ksf
del check.key
format c: < format.ksf
GOTO LB2

:LB1
ren fdisk.ksf check.key
fdisk < check.key

:LB2
```

Complete the Startup Diskette at SRVNT4

The procedure described in this section can be performed for every pristine client installation. The system names used are examples.

1. Modify the **Network Client** computer name in the file "A:/NET/SYSTEM.INI":

   ```
   Computername=CLIPSNT4
   ```

2. Copy the file "CLIPSNT4" from operating system directory to "A:\CLIPS.ANS"

Modify the pristine machine computer name in the "A:CLIPS.ANS" file:

```
(UserData)
ComputerName = CLIPSNT4
```

3. Copy the file "NVDMA/SETUP.ISS" to "A:/SETUP.ISS"

   In the "Client Configuration" mask labeled (SdShowDlgEdit3-0), modify the variables value:

   ```
   szEdit1=clipsnt4
   szEdit2=clipsnt4
   szEdit3=clipsnt4
   ```

   In the "Server Configuration" mask labeled (SdShowDlgEdit2-0), modify the variables value:

   ```
   szEdit1=srvnt4
   szEdit2=srvnt4
   ```

Starting the Pristine Machine

1. Insert the startup diskette in pristine machine drive A, and power on.
2. When the Windows NT unattended procedure begins to copy the remote files, remove the diskette from drive A.

   Note: The workstation will reboot four times during the installation process.
3. After the fourth reboot, the machine is fully configured as a Software Distribution Server and is now ready to be used as a Software Distribution Client for Windows NT.
4. At the login prompt, enter your username as "Administrator" and leave the "Password" field blank. If you have installed within a domain, you may also specify the name of the client machine in the "Computer Name" field.
5. Once you are logged on, define a password for the administrator and delete the pristine user.

At this point the pristine scenario is complete.

Chapter 7. Pristine Installation Scenario for a Windows 2000 Client

This scenario explains how to install the Microsoft Windows 2000 operating system and the TME 10 Software Distribution Client for Windows 2000 on a pristine machine in unattended mode. After the installation, the pristine machine functions as a Windows 2000 server or workstation with the TME 10 Software Distribution Client for Windows 2000 running on it.

To complete this pristine installation, you must perform the following tasks:

- Copy the source files for the Windows 2000 operating system onto a Windows 2000 machine named, for example, SRVW2K
- Copy the source files for the TME 10 Software Distribution Client CD onto SRVW2K
- Prepare a startup diskette for the pristine client machine
- Use the startup diskette to set up the pristine machine CLIPW2K and connect it to SRVW2K.

Note: To run this scenario, the user must be logged on with administrator authority.

Environment

- Machine that is named, for example, SRVW2K.

  SRVW2K has Windows 2000 installed and uses the TCP/IP and NetBEUI protocols. It is used as the preparation site and the image repository. If SRVW2K is in a Windows 2000 domain, it is installed as a stand-alone server in domain NTDOM1.
- Machine that is named, for example, CLIPSW2K.

  In this scenario, CLIPSW2K is the machine which will be configured as a TME 10 Software Distribution for Windows NT client.
- Machine that has DOS installed, and is used to transfer the DOS system to a diskette.

SRVW2K and CLIPSW2K are in the same domain, NTDOM1. They are connected by NetBEUI or TCP/IP during the pristine installation, and by TCP/IP after the installation.

Hardware Requirements

- CD-ROM that contains the Server Based Setup program for Windows 2000 installation
- 1 CD-ROM that contains the source files for the TME 10 Software Distribution Client for Windows 2000
- 1 blank high-density diskette
- Memory

The following are the minimum RAM requirements:

- 128 MB at the server
- 128 MB at the client (64 MB is the minimum, 256 MB improves performance)
- 640 KB at the DOS machine

- Disk space
  - 295 MB at the server for Windows 2000 Professional
  - 315 MB at the server for Windows 2000 Server
  - 45 MB at the server for the TME 10 Software Distribution Client for Windows 2000
  - 800 MB at the client for Windows 2000 Professional and the TME 10 Software Distribution Client for Windows 2000
  - 850 MB at the client for Windows 2000 Server and the TME 10 Software Distribution Client for Windows 2000

Software Requirements

- The installation files for the TME 10 Software Distribution Client for Windows 2000 on CD-ROM
- The installation files for Windows 2000 Server or Professional on CD-ROM
- MS-DOS or IBM-DOS 6.0 or higher for the boot floppy
- Microsoft Windows 2000 *Resource Kit*

  The *Resource Kit* is required only if you use the Windows 2000 Setup Manager to perform the pristine installation. You do not need it if you use and modify the `CLIPSW2K.ANS` file to perform the pristine installation.
- The ncadmin.exe, ncadmin.cnt and ncadmin.hlp files from the Windows NT4.0 Server CD-ROM

Further Information

For more information consult article Q252448: '*How to Create an MS-DOS Network Startup Disk in Windows 2000*' which can be found on the Microsoft Product Support Services web pages:

http://support.microsoft.com/support/kb/ articles/Q252/4/48.ASP

Communication Protocols

The following communication protocols are embedded in and supported by Windows 2000:

- TCP/IP
- NetBEUI

The NetBEUI or TCP/IP protocol is used when you run this installation scenario.

When the pristine installation is complete, the TME 10 Software Distribution client is configured with both NetBEUI and TCP/IP. TCP/IP is the preferred communication protocol.

Warning

DOS requires between 450 and 500 MB of unallocated free memory. If the operating system does not have this space available after the installation of both the scenario and the network drivers, the TME 10 Software Distribution setup program will fail to run.

A solution to this may be to use the smaller NetBEUI protocol instead of TCP/IP

Note: In this scenario, the TCP/IP host name also matches the computer name of the pristine machine.

Copying the Files from the CD-ROMs to SRVW2K

Perform the following steps to copy the source files for Windows 2000 and the TME 10 Software Distribution Client for Windows 2000 to SRVW2K:

1. Create the following directories and subdirectories on the root directory on SRVW2K:
   - `C:\SDPRISTINE\W2K_PRO` (for Windows 2000 Professional installation files)
   - `C:\SDPRISTINE\W2K_SRV` (for Windows 2000 Server installation files)
   - `C:\SDPRISTINE\NVDMA` (for Software Distribution Client installation files)

   Note: In the above example C: is the default drive, and SDPRISTINE is the default directory. These defaults can be changed.
2. Create the directory `CLIENTS` in the root directory on the C: drive on SRVW2K.
3. Use either Windows Explorer or the `COPY` command to copy the directory `clients\msclient` , with all its subdirectories, from the Windows 2000 Server CD-ROM to the directory `c:\clients\msclient` on SRVW2K.
4. Decompress from the Windows NT 4.0 Server CD-ROM with the utility "EXPAND.EXE" the files: ncadmin.cn_, ncadmin.ex_ and ncadmin.hl_ ; in the directory "NCADMIN" in the "C:\clients" for the Professional and Server instalation:
   ```
   e:\i386\expand.exe e:\i386\ncadmin.cn_ c:\client\ncadmin\ncadmin.cnt
   e:\i386\expand.exe e:\i386\ncadmin.ex_ c:\client\ncadmin\ncadmin.exe
   e:\i386\expand.exe e:\i386\ncadmin.hl_ c:\client\ncadmin\ncadmin.hlp
   ```
5. Copy all the files for the Windows 2000 Professional installation from the directory `I386` on the CD-ROM to the directory `C:\SDPRISTINE\W2K_PRO` on SRVW2K.
6. Copy all the files for the Windows 2000 Server installation from the directory `I386` on the CD-ROM to the directory `C:\SDPRISTINE\W2K_SRV` on SRVW2K.
7. Copy the source files for the TME 10 Software Distribution Client for Windows 2000 from the CD-ROM to the directory `C:\SDPRISTINE\NVDMA` on SRVW2K.

8. From the directory "pristnt" on the TME 10 Software Distribution for Windows 2000 CD-ROM, copy the following files from to the directory "C:\SDPRISTINE\W2K_PRO" and "C:\SDPRISTINE\W2K_SRV" on SRVW2K:

   ```
   FNDPINST.EXE
   FNDSLEEP.EXE
   NTCLIENT.CMD
   ```

9. Modify the"NTCLIENT.CMD" file in the directories "C:\SDPRISTINE\W2K_PRO" and "C:\SDPRISTINE\W2K_SRV" on SRVW2K, inserting the correct server name:

   ```
   @echo off
   c:\winnt4\pristine\fndsleep 25
   echo Start installation Software Distribution Client

   net use k: \\SRVW2K\nvdma pristine /user:SRVW2K\pristine /PERSISTENT:NO
               ↑↑↑↑↑↑                      ↑↑↑↑↑↑

   k:\setup -s  -fk:\setup.ins -f1%Systemroot%\pristine\setup.ISS -f2k
   :\setup.log
   del %Systemroot%\pristine\*.exe
   del %Systemroot%\pristine\*.cmd
   del %Systemroot%\pristine\*.iss
   cd ..
   rd pristine
   echo End installation Software Distribution Client
   :end
   ```

10. Use the Windows 2000 *Resource Kit* (Windows 2000 Setup Manager) or a text editor to modify the "CLIPSW2K.ANS" sample file in the directory "C:\SDPRISTINE\W2K_PRO" and "C:\SDPRISTINE\W2K_SRV" to create the answer file for the Windows 2000 unattended installation.

    Note: In this scenario, the following answer file, "CLIPSW2K.ANS", has been used. Use only the Notepad editor or an equivalent text editor to modify this file.

```
;SetupMgrTag
[Data]
      AutoPartition=1
      MsDosInitiated="0"
      UnattendedInstall="Yes"

[Unattended]
      UnattendMode=FullUnattended
      OemSkipEula=Yes
      OemPreinstall=Yes
      TargetPath=WIN2K
      FileSystem=LeaveAlone

[GuiUnattended]
      AdminPassword=*
      AutoLogon=Yes
      AutoLogonCount=1
      OEMSkipRegional=1
      TimeZone=110
      OemSkipWelcome=1

[UserData]
      FullName=Clips05-Pristine
      OrgName=Tivoli-Systems
      ComputerName=CLIPS05
      ProductId=RM233-2PRQQ-FR4RH-JP89H-46QYB

[Display]
      BitsPerPel=8
      Xresolution=800
      YResolution=600
      Vrefresh=75

[RegionalSettings]
      LanguageGroup=1
      SystemLocale=00000410
      UserLocale=00000410
      InputLocale=0410:00000410

[SetupMgr]
      DistFolder=D:\SDPRISTINE\win2kp
      DistShare=win2kp

[GuiRunOnce]
      Command0="c:\win2k\pristine\fndpinst.exe c:\win2k\pristine"

[Identification]
      JoinWorkgroup=TIVOLI-ROME
```

Figure 49 (Part 1 of 2). The CLIPSW2K.ANS answer file

```
[Networking]
      InstallDefaultComponents=Yes

[Params.Adapter01]
      InfID=*
```

Figure 49 (Part 2 of 2). The CLIPSW2K.ANS answer file

a. Use Notepad or an equivalent text editor to modify the file "CLIPSW2K.ANS". Add a carriage return after the last entry in the file to return the cursor to the left margin.

b. Note that in this sample file the pristine TCP/IP host name, "CLIPSW2K", is used as the Computer Name for the pristine machine. This is done so that the installation program will configure the pristine machine, using the computer name as the pristine TCP/IP hostname.

11. For the pristine scenario to run successfully, do not modify the suggested values for the following:

```
[GuiRunOnce]
Command0="c:\win2k\pristine\fndpinst.exe c:\win2k\pristine"

[Unattended]
TargetPath=WIN2K
```

    Where TargetPath is the system directory where Windows 2000 is installed (%SystemRoot%). Command0 is the path name of program to run for the installation of the client Software Distribution and its Arguments:

    "c:\Windows 2000\pristine\fndpinst.exe" is the pristine files path

12. With the Computer Manager create a new user "pristine" with password "pristine" in the group "Users".

13. Share the directories (Share name=W2K_PRO) "C:\SDPRISTINE\W2K_PRO" in Read-Only mode to the group "Everyone" and Full-Control for the user "pristine".

14. Share the directories (Share name=W2K_SRV) "C:\SDPRISTINE\W2K_SRV" in Read-Only mode to the group "Everyone" and Full-Control for the user "pristine".

15. Share the directories (Share name=NVDMA) "C:\SDPRISTINE\NVDMA" in Read-Only mode to the group "Everyone" and Full-Control for the user "pristine".

16. Copy the file "W2K_SRV\DOSNET.INF" to the directory "W2K_SRV\SDPRTNET.INF.SDP" and copy the file "W2K_PRO\DOSNET.INF" to the directory "W2K_PRO\DOSNET.INF.SDP" to create a backup.

17. Use Notepad or an equivalent text editor to edit the file "W2K_SRV\DOSNET.INF" and "W2K_PRO\DOSNET.INF" make the following changes starting from the first column:

    - Search for the key [Files], and add the following statements in the first point after the key label

```
d1,FNDSLEEP.EXE
d1,FNDPINST.EXE
d1,NTCLIENT.CMD
d1,SETUP.ISS

example:

[Files]
d1,FNDSLEEP.EXE
d1,FNDPINST.EXE
d1,NTCLIENT.CMD
d1,SETUP.ISS
d1,_default.pif ← (the original declaration begins here)
...
```

18. Copy "W2K_SRV\TXTSETUP.SIF" to "W2K_SRV\TXTSETUP.SIF.SDP" to create a backup and copy "W2K_PRO\TXTSETUP.SIF" to "W2K_PRO\TXTSETUP.SDP" to create a backup.
19. Use Notepad or an equivalent text editor to edit the file "TXTSETUP.SIF" and make the following changes starting from the first column:
    - Search for the key [WinntDirectories], and add a statement to increase the number value of one:

      In the Professional and Server version of "TXTSETUP.SIF", the last number is 62

      For the Professional and Server version, the new entry should read:

      ```
      63 = pristine
      ```

    - Search for the key [SourceDiskFiles].

      For the Professional and Server version of "TXTSETUP.SIF", add the following statements in the first line after the key label:

      ```
      fndsleep.exe = 1,,,,,,,63,0,0
      fndpinst.exe = 1,,,,,,,63,0,0
      ntclient.cmd = 1,,,,,,,63,0,0
      setup.iss    = 1,,,,,,,63,0,0
      ```

20. (This part is optional) Use the Server Manager item in the Administrative Tools group to add the server CLIPSW2K to the domain NTDOM1. Select Windows 2000 PROFESSIONAL OR SERVER as the Computer Type.
21. Customize the unattended installation file NVDMA\SETUP.ISS:
    a. Choose the TME 10 Software Distribution components you want to install and modify SETUP.ISS:
       - Base client
       - Graphical user interface
       - Documentation
       - HW/SW discovery
       - Mobile client.

    b. Enable the boot option.

Note: The boot option is mandatory. It enables the pristine target to reboot automatically during the installation process.

The following is a sample NVDMA\SETUP.ISS installation file:

```
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;;                                                                            ;;
;;  SETUP.ISS response file for a silent Installation.                        ;;
;;                                                                            ;;
;;  copy SETUP.ISS on your private directory and invoke SETUP as              ;;
;;  shown:                                                                    ;;
;;                                                                            ;;
;;     SETUP  -f1c:\mydir\setup.iss  -s                                       ;;
;;                                                                            ;;
;;  Check the results of the silent installation in the log                   ;;
;;  file created by SETUP (through the -f2 option) and in the                 ;;
;;  file named INSTLOG placed in the installation directory.                  ;;
;;                                                                            ;;
;;  Only the fields identified by the string ";******" can be                 ;;
;;  modified.                                                                 ;;
;;  All the other fields MUST not be modified.                                ;;
;;                                                                            ;;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;
;
[InstallSHIELD Silent]
Version=v3.00.000
File=Response File
[Application]
Name=Software Distribution
Version=3.1.5
Company=Tivoli
[DlgOrder]
Dlg0=Welcome-0
Dlg1=AskOptions-0
Dlg2=AskOptions-1
Dlg3=AskOptions-2
Dlg4=SdComponentDialog-0
Dlg5=SdSelectFolder-0
Dlg6=AskOptions-3
Dlg7=SdShowDlgEdit3-0
Dlg8=SdShowDlgEdit3-1
Dlg9=SdShowDlgEdit3-2
Dlg10=SdShowDlgEdit2-0
Dlg11=SdShowDlgEdit2-1
Dlg12=SdShowDlgEdit2-2
Dlg13=SdShowDlgEdit2-3
Dlg14=SdShowDlgEdit1-0
Dlg15=SdShowDlgEdit1-1
Dlg16=SdShowDlgEdit1-2
```

Figure 50 (Part 1 of 13). Sample SETUP.ISS installation file

```
Dlg17=SdShowDlgEdit1-3
Dlg18=AskOptions-4
Dlg19=SdFinishReboot-0
Count=20
[Welcome-0]
Result=1
[AskOptions-0]
;
Result=1
;
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;
;   THIS SECTION IS MEANINGFUL ONLY FOR MIGRATION FROM A PREVIOUS RELEASE
;
;   Information provided in this section is relative to the dialog
;   having  "Select Migration" title.
;
;******            Sel-0 "YES"
;                   Sel-1 "NO"
;
;                   Sel-X=0 means component NOT selected
;                   Sel-X=1 means component     selected
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
Sel-0=0
Sel-1=1
;
;
;
[AskOptions-1]
;
Result=1
;
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;
;   Information provided in this section is relative to the dialog
;   having  "Select Installation" title.
;
;******            Sel-0 "Software Distribution CLIENT"
```

Figure 50 (Part 2 of 13). Sample SETUP.ISS installation file

```
;                   Sel-1 "Software Distribution SERVER"
;
;                   Sel-X=0 means component NOT selected
;                   Sel-X=1 means component     selected
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
Sel-0=1
Sel-1=0
;
;
;
[AskOptions-2]
;
Result=1
;
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;
;   THIS SECTION IS MEANINGFUL ONLY FOR FUTURE RE-INSTALLATION
;
;   Information provided in this section is relative to the dialog
;   having  "Reinstall Selection" title.
;
;******            Sel-0 "Update the current installed components"
;                   Sel-1 "Install additional components"
;
;                   Sel-X=0 means component NOT selected
;                   Sel-X=1 means component     selected
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
Sel-0=0
Sel-1=1
;
;
;
[SdComponentDialog-0]
;
Result=1
Component-type=string
;
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
```

Figure 50 (Part 3 of 13). Sample SETUP.ISS installation file

```
;
;   Information provided in this section is relative to the dialog
;   having  "Select Components" title.
;
;******            Component-count "equal to the number of elements listed
;                                    below (Component-x)"
;
;******            Component-x     "equal to the option you want to install"
;
;
; WARNING: Use the appropiate Component-.. keys (SERVER or CLIENT SECTION)
;          depending on what you want to install.
;          The numbers following Component-.. must start with 0 and
;          must be sequential.
;
;          Example:
;            if you want install a CLIENT with the components 0, 1
;            and 3 the CORRECT SELECTION is:
;
;                     Component-count=3
;                     Component-0=Distribution Client Base
;                     Component-1=Distribution GUI
;                     Component-2=HW/SW Discovery
;
;             follows an example of a typical WRONG SELECTION:
;
;                     Component-count=3
;                     Component-0=Distribution Client Base
;                     Component-1=Distribution GUI
;                     Component-3=HW/SW Discovery
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;
; SERVER SECTION
;
;Component-count=5
;Component-0=Distribution Server Base
;Component-1=Distribution GUI
;Component-2=Distribution Documentation
;Component-3=HW/SW Discovery
;Component-4=Distribution Server Remote Communication
;
;
;
```

Figure 50 (Part 4 of 13). Sample SETUP.ISS installation file

```
; CLIENT SECTION
;
Component-count=3
Component-0=Distribution Client Base
Component-1=Distribution GUI
Component-2=Distribution Documentation
;Component-3=HW/SW Discovery
;Component-4=Distribution Client Mobile
;
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;
;   THIS SECTION IS MEANINGFUL ONLY FOR THE FIRST INSTALLATION EITHER OF A
;   CLIENT OR A SERVER
;
;   Information provided in this section is relative to the dialog
;   having  "Select Components" title.
;
;******            szDir = "Target Directory where the product is installed
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
szDir=C:\SOFTDIST
;
;
;
[SdSelectFolder-0]
Result=1
;
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;
;   Information provided in this section is relative to the dialog
;   having  "Select Program Folder" title.
;
;******            szFolder = "Folder name"
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
szFolder=Tivoli TME 10 Software Distribution
;
;
;
[AskOptions-3]
;
Result=1
```

Figure 50 (Part 5 of 13). Sample SETUP.ISS installation file

```
;
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;
;   THIS SECTION IS MEANINGFUL ONLY FOR THE FIRST INSTALLATION EITHER OF A
;   CLIENT OR A SERVER
;
;
;   Information provided in this section is relative to the dialog
;   having  "Select Protocol" title.
;
;******            Sel-0 "Tcp/Ip protocol"
;                  Sel-1 "Netbios Protocol"
;                  Sel-2 "Ipx Protocol"
;
;                  Sel-X=0 means component NOT selected
;                  Sel-X=1 means component     selected
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
Sel-0=1
Sel-1=0
Sel-2=0
;
;
[SdShowDlgEdit3-0]
Result=1
;
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;
;   THIS SECTION IS MEANINGFUL ONLY FOR THE FIRST INSTALLATION OF A
;   CLIENT WHEN TCP PROTOCOL IS CHOSEN
;
;   Information provided in this section is relative to the dialog
;   having  "Client Configuration" title.
;
;******            szEdit1 = Professional Name
;******            szEdit2 = Target Address
;******            szEdit3 = TCP/IP Name
;
; WARNING  for all these three fields a default value is provided

;          if you want use them write DEFAULT as field value.
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
```

Figure 50 (Part 6 of 13). Sample SETUP.ISS installation file

```
szEdit1=clipsw2k
szEdit2=clipsw2k
szEdit3=clipsw2k
;
;
;
[SdShowDlgEdit3-1]
Result=1
;
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;
;   THIS SECTION IS MEANINGFUL ONLY FOR THE FIRST INSTALLATION OF A
;   CLIENT WHEN NETBIOS PROTOCOL IS CHOSEN
;
;   Information provided in this section is relative to the dialog
;   having  "Client Configuration" title.
;
;******            szEdit1 = Professional Name
;******            szEdit2 = Target Address
;******            szEdit3 = Netbios Name
;
; WARNING  for all these three fields a default value is provided
;          if you want use them write DEFAULT as field value.
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
szEdit1=DEFAULT
szEdit2=DEFAULT
szEdit3=DEFAULT
;
;
[SdShowDlgEdit3-2]
Result=1
;
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;
;   THIS SECTION IS MEANINGFUL ONLY FOR THE FIRST INSTALLATION OF A
;   CLIENT WHEN IPX PROTOCOL IS CHOSEN
;
;   Information provided in this section is relative to the dialog
;   having  "Client Configuration" title.
;
```

Figure 50 (Part 7 of 13). Sample SETUP.ISS installation file

```
;******            szEdit1 = Professional Name
;******            szEdit2 = Target Address
;******            szEdit3 = Ipx Name
;
; WARNING  for all these three fields a default value is provided
;          if you want use them write DEFAULT as field value.
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
szEdit1=DEFAULT
szEdit2=DEFAULT
szEdit3=DEFAULT
;
;
[SdShowDlgEdit2-0]
Result=1
;
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;
;   THIS SECTION IS MEANINGFUL ONLY FOR THE FIRST INSTALLATION OF A
;   CLIENT WHEN TCP PROTOCOL IS CHOSEN
;
;   Information provided in this section is relative to the dialog
;   having  "Server Configuration" title.
;
;******            szEdit1 =  Server Professional Name
;
;******            szEdit2 =  Server TCP/IP Name
;
;
; WARNING  for all these two fields a default value is provided
;          if you want use them write DEFAULT as field value.
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
szEdit1=SRVW2K
szEdit2=SRVW2K
;
;
;
[SdShowDlgEdit2-1]
Result=1
;
;
;
```

Figure 50 (Part 8 of 13). Sample SETUP.ISS installation file

```
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;
;   THIS SECTION IS MEANINGFUL ONLY FOR THE FIRST INSTALLATION OF A
;   CLIENT WHEN NBI PROTOCOL IS CHOSEN
;
;   Information provided in this section is relative to the dialog
;   having  "Server Configuration" title.
;
;******            szEdit1 =  Server Professional Name
;
;******            szEdit2 =  Server Netbios Name
;
; WARNING  for all these two fields a default value is provided
;          if you want use them write DEFAULT as field value.
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
szEdit1=DEFAULT
szEdit2=DEFAULT
;
;
;
[SdShowDlgEdit2-2]
Result=1
;
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;
;   THIS SECTION IS MEANINGFUL ONLY FOR THE FIRST INSTALLATION OF A
;   CLIENT WHEN IPX PROTOCOL IS CHOSEN
;
;   Information provided in this section is relative to the dialog
;   having  "Server Configuration" title.
;
;******            szEdit1 =  Server Professional Name
;
;******            szEdit2 =  Server IPX Name
;
; WARNING  for all these two fields a default value is provided
;          if you want use them write DEFAULT as field value.
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
szEdit1=DEFAULT
szEdit2=DEFAULT
;
;
```

Figure 50 (Part 9 of 13). Sample SETUP.ISS installation file

```
[SdShowDlgEdit2-3]
Result=1
;
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;
;   THIS SECTION IS MEANINGFUL ONLY FOR THE FIRST INSTALLATION OF A
;   SERVER
;
;   Information provided in this section is relative to the dialog
;   having  "Server Configuration" title.
;
;******            szEdit1 =  Professional Name
;
;******            szEdit2 =  Target Address
;
; WARNING  for all these two fields a default value is provided
;          if you want use them write DEFAULT as field value.
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
szEdit1=DEFAULT
szEdit2=DEFAULT
;
;
;
;
[SdShowDlgEdit1-0]
Result=1
;
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;
;   THIS SECTION IS MEANINGFUL ONLY FOR THE FIRST INSTALLATION OF A
;   SERVER WHEN TCP PROTOCOL IS CHOSEN
;
;   Information provided in this section is relative to the dialog
;   having  "Server Configuration" title.
;
;******            szEdit1 =  TCP/IP Name
;
; WARNING  for all these two fields a default value is provided
;          if you want use them write DEFAULT as field value.
```

Figure 50 (Part 10 of 13). Sample SETUP.ISS installation file

```
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
szEdit1=root
;
;
[SdShowDlgEdit1-1]
Result=1
;
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;
;   THIS SECTION IS MEANINGFUL ONLY FOR THE FIRST INSTALLATION OF A
;   SERVER WHEN NBI PROTOCOL IS CHOSEN
;
;   Information provided in this section is relative to the dialog
;   having  "Server Configuration" title.
;
;
;******            szEdit1 =  Netbios Name
;
;
; WARNING  for all these two fields a default value is provided
;          if you want use them write DEFAULT as field value.
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
szEdit1=DEFAULT
;
[SdShowDlgEdit1-2]
Result=1
;
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;
;   THIS SECTION IS MEANINGFUL ONLY FOR THE FIRST INSTALLATION OF A
;   SERVER WHEN IPX PROTOCOL IS CHOSEN
;
;   Information provided in this section is relative to the dialog
;   having  "Server Configuration" title.
;
;******            szEdit1 =  IPX Name
;
```

Figure 50 (Part 11 of 13). Sample SETUP.ISS installation file

```
; WARNING  for all these two fields a default value is provided
;          if you want use them write DEFAULT as field value.
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
szEdit1=DEFAULT
;
;
[SdShowDlgEdit1-3]
Result=1
;
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;
;   THIS SECTION IS MEANINGFUL ONLY FOR THE FIRST INSTALLATION
;
;   Information provided in this section is relative to the dialog
;   having  "Configuration" title.
;
;******            szEdit1 =  FNDUSER environment variable value
;
; WARNING  for all these two fields a default value is provided
;          if you want use them write DEFAULT as field value.
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
szEdit1=DEFAULT
;
;
;
[AskOptions-4]
;
Result=1
;
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;
;   THIS SECTION IS MEANINGFUL ONLY FOR THE FIRST INSTALLATION EITHER OF A
;   CLIENT OR A SERVER
;
;   Information provided in this section is relative to the dialog
;   having  "Start Product Selection" title.
;
;******            Sel-0 = Automatic Startup
;                  Sel-1 = Manual Startup
;
```

Figure 50 (Part 12 of 13). Sample SETUP.ISS installation file

```
;                  Sel-X=0 means component NOT selected
;                  Sel-X=1 means component     selected
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
Sel-0=1
Sel-1=0
;
;
;
;
[SdFinishReboot-0]
Result=1
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;
;   Information provided in this section is relative to the dialog
;   having  "Setup Complete" title.
;
;******            BootOption = 0 "No I will restart my computer later"
;                  BootOption = 3 "Yes I want to restart my computer now"
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
BootOption=3
;
;
```

Figure 50 (Part 13 of 13). Sample SETUP.ISS installation file

Formatting the Startup Diskette at the DOS Machine

Perform the following steps to format the diskette:

1. Insert the blank diskette in **drive A** of a machine that is running either **MS-DOS** or **IBM DOS**.
2. Enter the command <**format a: /s**>, to format the diskette and to copy hidden system files; or <**format a:**> and then, once the format procedure is complete, <**sys a:**>
3. Copy the files `FDISK.COM` and `FORMAT.COM` from the **DOS** directory to the diskette.

Preparing the Startup Diskette at SRVW2K

Perform the following steps to prepare the diskette. Note that you must have administrator authority to prepare the diskette.

1. Run the **Network Client Administrator** program "ncadmin.exe" in the directory "c:\clients\ncadmin".
2. Select **Make Network Installation Start Disk**, and then **Continue**.

The Share Network Client Installation Files window appears.

3. Select **Share Files** to enable the Path field.
4. In the Path field, type <**c:\clients**>.
5. In the Share Name field, type **clients**, and then select **OK**.

   The Target Workstation Configuration window appears.
6. Select the network card, for example the **IBM Token Ring 4/16MB Network Adapter Card**, and then select **OK**. If your network card is not listed, select a standard type, such as **NE2000**. Then, after the startup disk is created, modify it to utilise your specific network card drivers. This procedure is described in more detail in Step 12

   The Network Startup Disk Configuration window appears.
7. Enter **CLIPSW2K** in the Computer Name field and **PRISTINE** in the User Name field.

   The parameter you enter in the Domain Name field depends on the configuration of the Pristine Server. The server name, in this example SRVW2K, must be used when the Pristine Server is a Stand Alone Windows 2000 Server. However, if you are using a Windows 2000 Primary/Backup Domain Controller Server, it is also acceptable to enter the default domain nam.
8. Select **TCP\IP** as the Network Protocol.

   Warning

   DOS requires between 450 and 500 MB of unallocated free memory. If the operating system does not have this space available after the installation of both the scenario and the network drivers, the TME 10 Software Distribution setup program will fail to run.

   A solution to this may be to use the smaller NetBEUI protocol instead of TCP/IP
9. Select **A:** as the Destination Path, and then select **OK**.

   The Confirm Network Disk Configuration panel appears.
10. Select **OK**.
11. Exit from the Network Client Administrator utility after it has transferred the network files onto the diskette.
12. Test the startup diskette. Once tested successfully, you can use the same diskette. Copy the diskette and modify the client name in the `system.ini` file for different client installations of the same type of computer.

    If you use the same name, the workstation will not be able to log on to the server/domain because there is a duplicate Computer Name in the network.

    If you do not want to test the startup diskette, go to step 13 on page 144. To test the diskette, modify the autoexec.bat file by changing the lines:

```
a:\net\net start
net use k: \\SRVW2K\CLIENTS
```

to:

```
a:\net\net logon pristine pristine /YES /S   AVEPW:NO
net use k: \\SRVW2K.\W2K_WST /persistent:no
k:
```

Insert the startup diskette in the A drive of the pristine machine and power on.

If the test is successful, at the end of the startup the pristine machine is on the network driver k:

Client connection errors can occur when drivers are specified incorrectly for the network card. This often happens when you specify a type of TokenRing adapter's driver instead of the specific adapter's driver. To correct this, copy the DOS driver on the adapters drivers diskettes (generally contained in the DOS directory on the diskette IBM 16\4 Token Ring Adapter)to: A:\NET directory:

```
IBMTRP.DOS
IBMTRP.NIF
LA1.MSG
```

If the name of the driver files differ from the original names, modify the Microsoft Network Client for DOS configuration files:

```
protocol.ini
system.ini
```

In the `protocol.ini` file change the line:

```
drivername=IBMTOK$
```

to

```
drivername=IBMTRP$
```

In the `system.ini` file change the line:

```
netcard=ibmtok.dos
```

to

```
netcard=ibmtrp.dos
```

Note: Other types of network card can also be used. Copy the driver files for your network card to the A:\NET directory and modify the `netcard` and `drivername` statements in the `system.ini` and `protocol.ini` configuration files (as shown above).

Reboot the startup diskette on the pristine machine.

13. In order to make the pristine process unattended, as far as possible, you can use the following keystroke files to create only one FAT16 partition on the C: drive of the pristine machine. The partition size can equal the size of the hard disk, up to a maximum of 2Gb:

```
FDISK.KSF           FORMAT.KSF

  1                     Y
  1                     <new line>
  Y
<new line>
```

You can partition your pristine machine differently by specifying different options to the above files.

You now need to modify the autoexec.bat file.

14. Edit the file A:\AUTOEXEC.BAT, and comment out the "net" statements.

    At the end of the file add the following new statements to connect to the server and run the operating system installation:

```
Path=a:\;a:\net
...
...
REM a:\net\net start
REM net use k: \\SRVW2K\CLIENTS
REM k:\MSCLIENT...

NET LOGON pristine pristine /YES /SAVEPW:NO
net use k: \\SRVW2K\W2K_PRO /persistent:no

copy SETUP.ISS k:\SETUP.ISS

k:\winnt /u:a:\clips.ans /s:k:\
```

    If you want to partition and format the disk by yourself, enter only the preceding statements and jump to the next part.

    If you want to make the primary partition FAT16, insert the following statements in the first line:

```
IF EXIST fdisk.ksf GOTO LB1
copy check.key fdisk.ksf
del check.key
format c: < format.ksf
GOTO LB2

:LB1
ren fdisk.ksf check.key
fdisk < check.key

:LB2
```

Complete the Startup Diskette at SRVW2K

The procedure described in this section can be performed for every pristine client installation. The system names used are examples.

1. Modify the **Network Client** computer name in the file "A:/NET/SYSTEM.INI":

   ```
   Computername=CLIPSW2K
   ```

2. Copy the file "CLIPSW2K.ANS" from operating system directory to "A:/CLIPSW2K.ANS"

   Modify the pristine machine computer name:

   ```
   (UserData)
   ComputerName = CLIPSW2K
   ```

3. Copy the file "NVDMA/SETUP.ISS" to "A:/SETUP.ISS"

   In the "Client Configuration" mask labeled (SdShowDlgEdit3-0), modify the szEdit variables value so that it reads:

   ```
   szEdit1=clipsw2k
   szEdit2=clipsw2k
   szEdit3=clipsw2k
   ```

   In the "Server Configuration" mask labeled (SdShowDlgEdit2-0), modify the szEdit variables value so that it reads:

   ```
   szEdit1=srvw2k
   szEdit2=srvw2k
   ```

Starting the Pristine Machine

1. Insert the startup diskette in pristine machine drive A, and power on.
2. When the Windows 2000 unattended procedure begins to copy the remote files, remove the diskette from drive A.

   Note: The workstation will reboot four times during the installation process.

3. After the fourth reboot, the machine is fully configured as a Software Distribution Server and is now ready to be used as a Software Distribution Client for Windows 2000.
4. At the login prompt, enter your username as "Administrator" and leave the "Password" field blank. If you have installed within a domain, you may also specify the name of the client machine in the "Computer Name" field.
5. Once you are logged on, define a password for the administrator and delete the pristine user.

At this point the pristine scenario is complete.

Chapter 8. Pristine Installation Scenario for a Windows 95 Client

This scenario explains how to install the Microsoft Windows 95 operating system and the TME 10 Software Distribution Client for Windows 95 on a pristine machine. To accomplish this you must perform the following tasks:

- Copy the source files for the Windows 95 operating system onto a Windows 95 machine named, for example, SERVER1
- Copy the source files for the TME 10 Software Distribution Client onto SERVER1
- Prepare the `STARTUP` diskette for the pristine machine
- Use the `STARTUP` diskette to set up the pristine machine

Hardware Requirements

- Windows 95 machine that is named, for example, `SERVER1`
- Windows 95 CD-ROM that contains the Server Based Setup program (`netsetup.exe`)
- Windows 95 machine, which must have the same hardware and operating system configuration that you plan to install on the pristine target
- Pristine target machine
- One blank diskette
- Memory
  - 8 MB at the server
  - 12 MB at the client without the GUI, 16 MB with the GUI
- Disk space at the server
  - 90 MB for the Windows 95 operating system
  - 30 MB for the TME 10 Software Distribution Client
- Disk space at the client
  - 20 MB for the Windows 95 operating system
  - For the TME 10 Software Distribution Client
    - 5 MB for the client base
    - 8 MB for the GUI
    - 4 MB for the documentation
    - 4 MB for HW/SW discovery
    - 6 MB for the mobile client (including the base code)

Software Requirements

- Windows 95 operating system.
- The installation files for the TME 10 Software Distribution Client for Windows 95 on CD-ROM or diskette

- FNDBOOT.EXE, which is contained in the TME 10 Software Distribution Client for Windows 95 component.
- Microsoft Windows 95 *Resource Kit* manual. You must order this book separately.

Copy the Windows 95 Source Files onto SERVER1

1. Use the Windows 95 Server Based Setup, `NETSETUP.EXE`, to install the Windows 95 source files on the server. Follow the directions that appear in Chapter 4 of the Windows 95 *Resource Kit* manual.
2. Select one of the installation policy options that the setup program requests you to choose.

   The choice you make is not important because TME 10 Software Distribution for Windows 95 uses its own `MSBATCH.INF` file. However, you must select one of these options.
3. Use \\SERVER1\WIN95SRC as the universal naming convention (UNC) name for the remote directory where you store the Windows 95 source files.

Copy the TME 10 Software Distribution Client Source Files onto SERVER1

Copy all the installation files for the TME 10 Software Distribution Client into the SERVER1 directory `\\SERVER1\SDSC`.

Prepare a Startup Diskette for the Pristine Machine

This section explains two methods of preparing a startup “bootable” diskette to connect the pristine machine to SERVER1. The two methods are explained in the following sections:

- “Using the Windows 95 Setup Program to Prepare the Diskette”
- “Using the Windows 95 Machine to Prepare the Diskette”

After you complete the steps in either one of these sections, go to “Preparing the Diskette” to complete the connection to SERVER1 and to startup the pristine machine.

Using the Windows 95 Setup Program to Prepare the Diskette

To use the Windows 95 Setup Program to prepare the diskette, perform the following steps:

1. Follow the directions in the Windows 95 *Resource Kit* manual in the section called "Shared Installation" to build the Startup diskette.
2. After the diskette is built, add and delete files from the diskette until only the following files remain:

```
IO.SYS
COMMAND.COM
FORMAT.COM
FNDBOOT.EXE          <---------- This file is supplied with
NET.EXE                          TME 10 Software Distribution for
NET.MSG                          Windows 95
PROTMAN.DOS
FDISK.EXE
PROTMAN.EXE
IFSHLP.SYS
HIMEM.SYS
NDISHLP.SYS
IBMTOK.DOS
NETH.MSG
PROTOCOL.INI
MSDOS.SYS
SYSTEM.DAT
```

3. Now perform all the steps in the section named “Preparing the Diskette” on page 150, to complete the preparation of the diskette.

Using the Windows 95 Machine to Prepare the Diskette

To use the Windows 95 machine to prepare the diskette, perform the following steps:

1. Create a STARTUP disk from the `add/remove programs` folder on the Windows 95 machine.
2. Delete the following unnecessary files:

```
DRVSPACE.BIN
ATTRIB.EXE
EDIT.COM
SCANDISK.EXE
SCANDISK.INI
DEBUG.EXE
CHKDSK.EXE
UNINSTAL.EXE
MODE.COM
EGA.CPI
KEYB.COM
KEYBOARD.SYS
SYS.COM
DISPLAY.SYS
COUNTRY.SYS
```

3. Copy the following network files:

```
  Name                    Source Location
============================================================
 NET.EXE                  \\SERVER1\WIN95SRC
 NET.MSG                  \\SERVER1\WIN95SRC
 PROTMAN.DOS              \\SERVER1\WIN95SRC
 PROTMAN.EXE              \\SERVER1\WIN95SRC
 PROTOCOL.INI             c:\windows (Preparation Site)
 IFSHLP.SYS               \\SERVER1\WIN95SRC
 HIMEM.SYS                \\SERVER1\WIN95SRC
 NDISHLP.SYS              \\SERVER1\WIN95SRC
 IBMTOK.DOS *             \\SERVER1\WIN95SRC
 NETH.MSG                 \\SERVER1\WIN95SRC
 FNDBOOT.EXE              (from Distribution Client Support)
```

(*) This is the name of the adapter driver for the IBM token ring. If you use another adapter driver you must replace the name `IBMTOK.DOS` with the correct name.

4. Now perform all the steps in the section named “Preparing the Diskette,” to complete the preparation of the diskette.

Preparing the Diskette

To complete the preparation of the diskette, edit the following files:

1. Edit the A:\AUTOEXEC.BAT file as follows:

```
@echo off
if exist minimal.reg goto CREAREG
goto START
@echo *******create minimal registry ****************
:CREAREG
REGEDIT /C MINIMAL.REG
ren minimal.reg old.reg
@echo *******format drive C: ************************
:START
if exist fdisk.ksf goto LB1
copy check.key fdisk.ksf
del check.key
FORMAT c: <format.ksf
goto LB2
:LB1
ren fdisk.ksf check.key
fdisk < check.key
a:\fndboot.exe
:LB2
@echo *******start connection************************
net start
net logon admin padmin /savepw:no /y
net use e: \\SERVER1\WIN95SRC
```

```
copy mysetup.* c:\
@echo *******start Windows 95 Setup******************
e:\setup e:\MYBATCH.INF
```

2. Edit A:\CONFIG.SYS as follows:

```
DEVICE=A:\HIMEM.SYS
BUFFERS=20
FILES=60
```

3. Edit A:\FORMAT.KSF as follows:

```
Y
PRISTINE
N
(new line)
```

4. Edit A:\FDISK.KSF as follows:

```
1
1
Y
(new line)
```

5. Edit A:\MINIMAL.REG as follows, customizing the values that are marked with an arrow:

```
REGEDIT4

[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE]

[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\Software]

[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\Software\Microsoft]

[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\Software\Microsoft\Windows]

[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\Software\Microsoft\Windows\CurrentVersion]
"SystemRoot"="e:\\t"

[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\Software\Microsoft\Windows\CurrentVersion\Setup]
"detectedlastdrive"="Z&"
"BootDir"="C:\\WINDOWS"
"BootHost"="C:\\WINDOWS"
"OldWinBootDir"="C:\\WINDOWS\\WINBOOT"
"WinDir"="C:\\WINDOWS"
"AppsDir"="C:\\WINDOWS"
"WinbootDir"="A:\\"
```

```
"HostWinBootDir"="C:\\WINDOWS\\SUBOOT"
"MachineDir"="C:\\WINDOWS"
"WinAdminDir"="C:\\WINDOWS"
"SharedDir"="C:\\WINDOWS"
"SysDir"="C:\\WINDOWS\\SYSTEM"
"SourcePath"="A:\\"
"OldWinDir"=""
"UninstallDir"="C:\\UNINSTAL.000"
"BackupDir"="C:\\UNINSTAL.000"
"SetupTempDir"="C:\\WININST0.400"
"SetupScratchDir"="C:\\WININST0.400"
"WallPaper"=""
"TileWallpaper"="0"
"ICMPath"="C:\\WINDOWS\\SYSTEM\\COLOR"
"ConfigPath"="C:\\WINDOWS\\config"
"lastdrive"="Z"



[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\Software\Microsoft\Windows\CurrentVersion\Setup\WinbootDir]
"devdir"="A:\\"

[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\Software\Microsoft\Windows\CurrentVersion\Network]

[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\Software\Microsoft\Windows\CurrentVersion\Network\Real Mode Net]
"transport"="*netbeui,ndishlp.sys"
"netcard"="ibmtok.dos"            <----------------
"LoadRMDrivers"=hex:00,00,00,00
"preferredredir"="VREDIR"
"Transition"=hex:01

[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\Software\Classes]

[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\System]

[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\System\CurrentControlSet]

[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\System\CurrentControlSet\Services]

[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\System\CurrentControlSet\Services\VxD]

[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\System\CurrentControlSet\Services\VxD\VNETSUP]
"ComputerName"="PRISTINE"         <---------------
"Workgroup"="PRISTINES"           <---------------
"Comment"="PRISTINE SCENARIO"     <---------------
"MaintainServerList"="2"
"LMAnnounce"="0"
"StaticVxD"="vnetsup.vxd"
"Start"=hex:00
"NetClean"=hex:01

[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\System\CurrentControlSet\Services\VxD\VNETSUP\Ndi]
```

```
[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\System\CurrentControlSet\Services\VxD\VNETSUP\Ndi\params]

[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\System\CurrentControlSet\Services\VxD\VNETSUP\Ndi\params\
MaintainServerList]
"default"="2"
"ParamDesc"="Browse Master"
"type"="enum"
@="2"

[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\System\
CurrentControlSet\Services\VxD\VNETSUP\Ndi\params\MaintainServerList\enum]

"2"="Automatic"
"1"="Enable"
"0"="Disable"

[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\System\CurrentControlSet\Services\VxD\VNETSUP\Ndi\params\LMAnnounce]
"default"="0"
"ParamDesc"="LM Announce"
"type"="enum"
@="0"

[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\System\CurrentControlSet\Services\VxD\VNETSUP\Ndi\params\LMAnnounce\en
um]
"1"="Yes"
"0"="No"

[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\System\CurrentControlSet\Services\NWNP32]

[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\System\CurrentControlSet\Services\NWNP32\NetworkProvider]
"AuthenticatingAgent"="SERVER"        <----------------------

[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\System\CurrentControlSet\Control]

[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\System\CurrentControlSet\Control\ComputerName]

[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\System\CurrentControlSet\Control\ComputerName\ComputerName]
"ComputerName"="PRISTINE"             <----------------------

[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\Enum]

[HKEY_USERS]

[HKEY_USERS\.Default]
```

6. Edit the `\\SERVER1\WIN95SRC\MYBATCH.INF.` file to customize the values that are marked with an arrow. This file is in the directory where the source files for the Windows 95 operating system are stored. Refer to the Windows 95 *Resource Kit* manual for further information on how to edit this file.

   Note that the Product ID is provided with the Windows 95 CD-ROM.

```
[BatchSetup]
Version=1.0a
SaveDate=03/11/95

[SETUP]
ebd=0
Express=1
InstallType=3
Verify=0
InstallDir="C:\WINDOWS"
CCP=0
ProductID=0402150643                  <------------------
ProductType=1
Uninstall=0
DevicePath=0
reboot=1
PenWinWarning=0
TimeZone="W. Europe"                  <------------------
vrc=0
ChangeDir=0
OptionalComponents=1
Network=1
System=0
CleanBoot=0
Display=0
NoPrompt2Boot=0

[NameAndOrg]
Display=0
Name="PRISTINE"                       <-------------------
Org="COMPANY"                         <-------------------

[NETWORK]
WorkstationSetup=0
Display=0
Clients=VREDIR
Protocols=NETBEUI,MSTCP
Services=VSERVER
ComputerName="PRISTINE"               <------------------
Workgroup="PRISTINES"                 <------------------
Description="SCENARIO DI PRISTINE"    <------------------

[VREDIR]
ValidatedLogon=0


[MSTCP]
DHCP=0
IPAddress=9.87.232.82           <-----------------
SubnetMask=255.255.248.0        <-----------------
WINS=0
```

```
DNS=1
Hostname=pristine                       <-----------------
Domain=rnsl.ibm.com                     <-----------------
Gateways=9.87.232.254           <-----------------

[VSERVER]
LMAnnounce=0
MaintainServerList=0

[OptionalComponents]
"Accessibility Options"=1
"Accessories"=1
"Communications"=1
"Disk Tools"=1
"Multimedia"=1
"Screen Savers"=0
"Disk compression tools"=0
"Paint"=1
"HyperTerminal"=1
"Defrag"=1
"Calculator"=1
"Backup"=0
"Phone Dialer"=1
"Flying Windows"=1
"Microsoft Fax"=0
"Microsoft Fax Services"=0
"Microsoft Fax Viewer"=0
"The Microsoft Network"=0
"Audio Compression"=0
"Video Compression"=1
"Sound Recorder"=0
"Volume Control"=0
"Media Player"=1
"Microsoft Exchange"=0
"Microsoft Mail Services"=0
"Briefcase"=0
"Document Templates"=1
"WordPad"=1
"Dial-Up Networking"=0
"Direct Cable Connection"=0
"Mouse Pointers"=0
"Windows 95 Tour"=0
"Online User's Guide"=0
"Desktop Wallpaper"=0
"System Monitor"=0
"Net Watcher"=0
"Character Map"=0
"Additional Screen Savers"=0
"Games"=0
"Quick View"=0
"System Resource Meter"=0
"CompuServe Mail Services"=0
```

```
"Sample Sounds"=0
"Musica Sound Scheme"=0
"Jungle Sound Scheme"=0
"Robotz Sound Scheme"=0
"Utopia Sound Scheme"=0
"CD Player"=0

[Printers]

[version]
LayoutFile=layout.inf
signature="$CHICAGO$"
SetupClass=BASE

[INSTALL]
AddReg=nvdmaddreg

[nvdmaddreg]
HKLM,Software\Microsoft\Windows\CurrentVersion\RunOnce,SDSCSetup,,"%30%\mysetup.bat"
```

7. Edit a:\MYSETUP.BAT as follows:

   ```
   \\SERVER1\SDSC\SETUP.EXE -S
   ```

8. Create the directory `mysetup.pif`
   a. Select the item **a:\mysetup.bat** from Windows Explorer
   b. From the File menu, select **Properties**.
   c. Select **Program**.
   d. Select **Close on exit**.
   e. Select **OK**.

      The directory `mysetup.pif` is created.
9. Copy the directory `mysetup.pif` onto the disk.
10. Edit \\SERVER1\SDSC\SETUP.ISS, which is supplied with TME 10 Software Distribution for Windows 95, as follows:

    ```
    ;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
    ;;                                                                            ;;
    ;;  SETUP.ISS response file for a silent Installation.                        ;;
    ;;                                                                            ;;
    ;;  copy SETUP.ISS on your private directory and invoke SETUP as              ;;
    ;;  shown:                                                                    ;;
    ;;                                                                            ;;
    ;;     SETUP  -f1c:\mydir\setup.iss  -s                                       ;;
    ;;                                                                            ;;
    ;;  Check the results of the silent installation in the log                   ;;
    ;;  file created by SETUP (through the -f2 option) and in the                 ;;
    ;;  file named INSTLOG placed in the installation directory.                  ;;
    ```

```
;;                                                                      ;;
;;  Only the fields identified by the string ";******" can be           ;;
;;  modified.                                                           ;;
;;  All the other fields MUST not be modified.                          ;;
;;                                                                      ;;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;
;
[InstallSHIELD Silent]
Version=v3.00.000
File=Response File
[Application]
Name=DemoSHIELD v4.0
Version=4.00.000
Company=SampleCompany
[DlgOrder]
Dlg0=Welcome-0
Dlg1=AskOptions-0
Dlg2=AskOptions-1
Dlg3=AskOptions-2
Dlg4=SdComponentDialog-0
Dlg5=SdSelectFolder-0
Dlg6=AskOptions-3
Dlg7=SdShowDlgEdit3-0
Dlg8=SdShowDlgEdit3-1
Dlg9=SdShowDlgEdit3-2
Dlg10=SdShowDlgEdit2-0
Dlg11=SdShowDlgEdit2-1
Dlg12=SdShowDlgEdit2-2
Dlg13=SdShowDlgEdit2-3
Dlg14=SdShowDlgEdit1-0
Dlg15=SdShowDlgEdit1-1
Dlg16=SdShowDlgEdit1-2
Dlg17=SdShowDlgEdit1-3
Dlg18=AskOptions-4
Dlg19=SdFinishReboot-0
Count=20
[Welcome-0]
Result=1
[AskOptions-0]
;
Result=1
;
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;                                                                       ;
; USE THIS SECTION ONLY FOR MIGRATION FROM A PREVIOUS RELEASE           ;
;                                                                       ;
;   Information provided in this section relates to the                 ;
;   "Select Migration" dialog.                                          ;
;                                                                       ;
```

```
;******            Sel-0 "YES"                                    ;
;******            Sel-1 "NO"                                     ;
;                                                                  ;
;                   Sel-X=0 means component is NOT selected        ;
;                   Sel-X=1 means component is     selected        ;
;                                                                  ;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
Sel-0=1
Sel-1=0
;
;
;
[AskOptions-1]
;
Result=1
;
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;                                                                  ;
;   Information provided in this section relates to the            ;
;   "Select Installation" dialog.                                  ;
;                                                                  ;
;******            Sel-0 "Software Distribution CLIENT"           ;
;******            Sel-1 "Software Distribution SERVER"           ;
;                                                                  ;
;                   Sel-X=0 means component is NOT selected        ;
;                   Sel-X=1 means component is     selected        ;
;                                                                  ;
;Choose one of the following combinations:                         ;
;                                                                  ;
; Sel-0=1     to install the                                       ;
; Sel-1=0     Software Distribution client                         ;
;                                                                  ;
; Sel-0=0     to install the                                       ;
; Sel-1=1     Software Distribution server                         ;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
Sel-0=1
Sel-1=0
;
;
;
[AskOptions-2]
;
Result=1
;
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;                                                                  ;
;   THIS SECTION IS MEANINGFUL ONLY FOR FUTURE RE-INSTALLATION     ;
;                                                                  ;
```

```
;   Information provided in this section relates to the              ;
;   "Reinstall Selection" dialog.                                    ;
;                                                                    ;
;******            Sel-0 "Update the current installed components"   ;
;******            Sel-1 "Install additional components"             ;
;                                                                    ;
;                   Sel-X=0 means component is NOT selected          ;
;                   Sel-X=1 means component is     selected          ;
;                                                                    ;
;Choose one of the following combinations:                           ;
;                                                                    ;
; Sel-0=1     to update the                                          ;
; Sel-1=0     components currently installed                         ;
;                                                                    ;
; Sel-0=0     to install additional                                  ;
; Sel-1=1     components                                             ;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
Sel-0=0
Sel-1=1
;
;
;
[SdComponentDialog-0]
;
Result=1
Component-type=string
;
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;                                                                                ;
; Information provided in this section relates to the                            ;
; "Select Components" dialog.                                                    ;
;                                                                                ;
;******   Component-count "equal to the number of elements listed               ;
;                                  below (Component-x)"                          ;
;                                                                                ;
;******   Component-x     "equal to the option you want to install"              ;
;                                                                                ;
;                                                                                ;
; WARNING: Use the appropriate Component-.. keys                                 ;
;          (SERVER or CLIENT SECTION);                                           ;
;          depending on what you want to install.                                ;
;          The numbers following Component-.. must start with 0 and              ;
;          must be sequential.                                                   ;
;                                                                                ;
;          Example:                                                              ;
;            If you want install a client with the components 0, 1,              ;
;            and 3, the correct selection is:                                    ;
;                                                                                ;
;                     Component-count=3                                          ;
;                     Component-0=Distribution Client Base                       ;
```

```
;                       Component-1=Distribution GUI                ;
;                       Component-2=HW/SW Discovery                 ;
;                                                                   ;
;             The following is an example of a typical incorrect    ;
;             selection:                                            ;
;                                                                   ;
;                       Component-count=3                           ;
;                       Component-0=Distribution Client Base        ;
;                       Component-1=Distribution GUI                ;
;                       Component-3=HW/SW Discovery                 ;
;                                                                   ;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;
; SERVER SECTION
;
;Component-count=5
;Component-0=Distribution Server Base
;Component-1=Distribution GUI
;Component-2=Distribution Documentation
;Component-3=HW/SW Discovery
;Component-4=Distribution Server Remote Communication
;
;
;
; CLIENT SECTION
;
Component-count=1
Component-0=Distribution Client Base
;Component-1=Distribution GUI
;Component-2=Distribution Documentation
;Component-3=HW/SW Discovery
;Component-4=Distribution Client Mobile
;
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;                                                                   ;
;   USE THIS SECTION ONLY FOR THE FIRST INSTALLATION EITHER OF A    ;
;   CLIENT OR A SERVER.                                             ;
;                                                                   ;
;   Information provided in this section relates to the             ;
;   "Select Components" dialog.                                     ;
;                                                                   ;
;******  szDir = "Target Directory where the product is installed";
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
szDir=C:\SOFTDIST
;
;
;
[SdSelectFolder-0]
Result=1
;
```

```
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;                                                              ;
;   Information provided in this section relates to the       ;
;   "Select Program Folder" dialog.                            ;
;                                                              ;
;******            szFolder = "Folder name"                    ;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
szFolder=TME 10 Software Distribution
;
;
;
[AskOptions-3]
;
Result=1
;
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;                                                                        ;
;   USE THIS SECTION ONLY FOR THE FIRST INSTALLATION EITHER OF A         ;
;   CLIENT OR A SERVER                                                   ;
;                                                                        ;
;                                                                        ;
;   Information provided in this section relates to the                 ;
;   "Select Protocol" dialog.                                            ;
;                                                                        ;
;******            Sel-0 "TCP/IP protocol"                               ;
;******            Sel-1 "NetBIOS Protocol"                              ;
;******            Sel-2 "IPX Protocol"                                  ;
;                                                                        ;
;                  Sel-X=0 means protocol NOT selected                   ;
;                  Sel-X=1 means protocol     selected                   ;
;                                                                        ;
;If you are installing a server, you can select one, two, or all three ;
;connection protocols.                                                   ;
;                                                                        ;
;For example, if you are installing a server you can make one of the   ;
;following selections:                                                   ;
;                                                                        ;
; Sel-0=1     You choose TCP/IP as the connection protocol.              ;
; Sel-1=0                                                                ;
; Sel-2=0                                                                ;
;                                                                        ;
; Sel-0=0     You choose NetBIOS and IPX as the connection protocols.  ;
; Sel-1=1                                                                ;
; Sel-2=1                                                                ;
;                                                                        ;
; Sel-0=1     You choose all three connection protocols.                 ;
; Sel-1=1                                                                ;
; Sel-2=1                                                                ;
```

```
;                                                                              ;
;If you are installing a client, you can select one connection protocol;
;at a time.                                                                    ;
;                                                                              ;
;For example, if you are installing a client, you can make one of the  ;
;following selections:                                                         ;
;                                                                              ;
; Sel-0=1     You choose TCP/IP as the connection protocol.                    ;
; Sel-1=0                                                                      ;
; Sel-2=0                                                                      ;
;                                                                              ;
; Sel-0=0     You choose IPX as the connection protocol.                       ;
; Sel-1=0                                                                      ;
; Sel-2=1                                                                      ;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
Sel-0=1
Sel-1=0
Sel-2=0
;
;
[SdShowDlgEdit3-0]
Result=1
;
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;                                                                              ;
;   USE THIS SECTION ONLY FOR THE FIRST INSTALLATION OF A                      ;
;   CLIENT WHEN THE TCP/IP PROTOCOL IS CHOSEN.                                 ;
;                                                                              ;
;   Information provided in this section relates to the                        ;
;   "Client Configuration" dialog.                                             ;
;                                                                              ;
;******            szEdit1 = "WorkStation Name"                               ;
;******            szEdit2 = "Target Address"                                 ;
;******            szEdit3 = "TCP/IP Name"                                    ;
;                                                                              ;
; WARNING  A default value is provided for these three fields.                 ;
;          If you want use them, write DEFAULT as the field value.             ;
;                                                                              ;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
szEdit1=DEFAULT
szEdit2=DEFAULT
szEdit3=DEFAULT
;
;
;
[SdShowDlgEdit3-1]
Result=1
;
;
;
```

```
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;                                                                   ;
;   USE THIS SECTION ONLY FOR THE FIRST INSTALLATION OF A           ;
;   CLIENT WHEN THE NETBIOS PROTOCOL IS CHOSEN.                     ;
;                                                                   ;
;   Information provided in this section relates to the            ;
;   "Client Configuration" dialog.                                  ;
;                                                                   ;
;******            szEdit1 = "WorkStation Name"                     ;
;******            szEdit2 = "Target Address"                       ;
;******            szEdit3 = "NetBIOS Name"                         ;
;                                                                   ;
; WARNING  A default value is provided for these three fields.      ;
;          If you want use them, write DEFAULT as the field value.  ;
;                                                                   ;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
szEdit1=DEFAULT
szEdit2=DEFAULT
szEdit3=DEFAULT
;
;
[SdShowDlgEdit3-2]
Result=1
;
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;                                                                    ;
;   USE THIS SECTION ONLY FOR THE FIRST INSTALLATION OF A            ;
;   CLIENT WHEN THE IPX PROTOCOL IS CHOSEN.                          ;
;                                                                    ;
;   Information provided in this section relates to the             ;
;   "Client Configuration" dialog.                                   ;
;                                                                    ;
;******            szEdit1 = "WorkStation Name"                      ;
;******            szEdit2 = "Target Address"                        ;
;******            szEdit3 = "IPX Name"                              ;
;                                                                    ;
; WARNING  A default value is provided for these three fields.       ;
;          If you want use them, write DEFAULT as the field value.   ;
;                                                                    ;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
szEdit1=DEFAULT
szEdit2=DEFAULT
szEdit3=DEFAULT
;
;
[SdShowDlgEdit2-0]
Result=1
;
;
;
```

```
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;                                                                    ;
;   USE THIS SECTION ONLY FOR THE FIRST INSTALLATION OF A            ;
;   CLIENT WHEN THE TCP/IP PROTOCOL IS CHOSEN.                       ;
;                                                                    ;
;   Information provided in this section relates to the             ;
;   "Server Configuration" dialog.                                   ;
;                                                                    ;
;******            szEdit1 =  "Server WorkStation Name"              ;
;                                                                    ;
;******            szEdit2 =  "Server TCP/IP Name"                   ;
;                                                                    ;
;                                                                    ;
; WARNING  A default value is provided for these two fields.         ;
;          If you want use them, write DEFAULT as the field value.   ;
;                                                                    ;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
szEdit1=SERVER
szEdit2=SERVER
;
;
;
[SdShowDlgEdit2-1]
Result=1
;
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;                                                                    ;
;   USE THIS SECTION ONLY FOR THE FIRST INSTALLATION OF A            ;
;   CLIENT WHEN THE NETBIOS PROTOCOL IS CHOSEN.                      ;
;                                                                    ;
;   Information provided in this section relates to the             ;
;   "Server Configuration" dialog.                                   ;
;                                                                    ;
;******            szEdit1 =  "Server WorkStation Name"              ;
;                                                                    ;
;******            szEdit2 =  "Server NetBIOS Name"                  ;
;                                                                    ;
; WARNING  A default value is provided for these two fields.         ;
;          If you want use them, write DEFAULT as the field value.   ;
;                                                                    ;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
szEdit1=DEFAULT
szEdit2=DEFAULT
;
;
;
[SdShowDlgEdit2-2]
Result=1
;
;
```

```
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;                                                                     ;
;   USE THIS SECTION ONLY FOR THE FIRST INSTALLATION OF A             ;
;   CLIENT WHEN THE IPX PROTOCOL IS CHOSEN.                           ;
;                                                                     ;
;   Information provided in this section relates to the               ;
;   "Server Configuration" dialog.                                    ;
;                                                                     ;
;******            szEdit1 = "Server WorkStation Name"                ;
;                                                                     ;
;******            szEdit2 = "Server IPX Name"                        ;
;                                                                     ;
; WARNING  A default value is provided for these two fields.          ;
;          If you want use them, write DEFAULT as the field value.    ;
;                                                                     ;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
szEdit1=DEFAULT
szEdit2=DEFAULT
;
;
[SdShowDlgEdit2-3]
Result=1
;
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;                                                                     ;
;   USE THIS SECTION ONLY FOR THE FIRST INSTALLATION OF A             ;
;   SERVER.                                                           ;
;                                                                     ;
;   Information provided in this section relates to the               ;
;   "Server Configuration" dialog.                                    ;
;                                                                     ;
;******            szEdit1 = "WorkStation Name"                       ;
;                                                                     ;
;******            szEdit2 = "Target Address"                         ;
;                                                                     ;
; WARNING  A default value is provided for these two field.           ;
;          If you want use them, write DEFAULT as the field value.    ;
;                                                                     ;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
szEdit1=DEFAULT
szEdit2=DEFAULT
;
;
;
;
[SdShowDlgEdit1-0]
Result=1
;
;
```

```
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;                                                                              ;
;   USE THIS SECTION ONLY FOR THE FIRST INSTALLATION OF A                      ;
;   SERVER WHEN THE TCP/IP PROTOCOL IS CHOSEN.                                 ;
;                                                                              ;
;   Information provided in this section relates to the                        ;
;   "Server Configuration" dialog.                                             ;
;                                                                              ;
;******            szEdit1 = "TCP/IP Name"                                    ;
;                                                                              ;
; WARNING  A default value is provided for this field.                         ;
;          If you want use it, write DEFAULT as the field value.               ;
;                                                                              ;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
szEdit1=DEFAULT
;
;
[SdShowDlgEdit1-1]
Result=1
;
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;                                                                              ;
;   USE THIS SECTION ONLY FOR THE FIRST INSTALLATION OF A                      ;
;   SERVER WHEN THE NETBIOS PROTOCOL IS CHOSEN.                                ;
;                                                                              ;
;   Information provided in this section relates to the                        ;
;   "Server Configuration" dialog.                                             ;
;                                                                              ;
;                                                                              ;
;******            szEdit1 =  "NetBIOS Name"                                  ;
;                                                                              ;
;                                                                              ;
; WARNING  A default value is provided for this field.                         ;
;          If you want use it, write DEFAULT as the field value.               ;
;                                                                              ;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
szEdit1=DEFAULT
;
[SdShowDlgEdit1-2]
Result=1
;
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;                                                                              ;
;   USE THIS SECTION ONLY FOR THE FIRST INSTALLATION OF A                      ;
;   SERVER WHEN THE IPX PROTOCOL IS CHOSEN.                                    ;
;                                                                              ;
;   Information provided in this section relates to the                        ;
```

```
;   "Server Configuration" dialog.                                    ;
;                                                                     ;
;******            szEdit1 = "IPX Name"                              ;
;                                                                     ;
; WARNING  A default value is provided for this field.                ;
;          If you want use it, write DEFAULT as the field value.      ;
;                                                                     ;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
szEdit1=DEFAULT
;
;
[SdShowDlgEdit1-3]
Result=1
;
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;                                                                     ;
;   USE THIS SECTION ONLY FOR THE FIRST INSTALLATION                   ;
;                                                                     ;
;   Information provided in this section relates to the               ;
;   "Configuration" dialog.                                           ;
;                                                                     ;
;******            szEdit1 =  "FNDUSER environment variable value"   ;
;                                                                     ;
; WARNING  A default value is provided for this field.                ;
;          If you want use it, write DEFAULT as field value.          ;
;                                                                     ;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
szEdit1=DEFAULT
;
;
;
[AskOptions-4]
;
Result=1
;
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;                                                                     ;
;   USE THIS SECTION ONLY FOR THE FIRST INSTALLATION OF EITHER A       ;
;   CLIENT OR A SERVER                                                ;
;                                                                     ;
;   Information provided in this section relates to the               ;
;   "Start Product Selection" dialog.                                 ;
;                                                                     ;
;******            Sel-0 = "Automatic Startup"                       ;
;                  Sel-1 = "Manual Startup"                          ;
;                                                                     ;
;                  Sel-X=0 means choice is NOT selected               ;
;                  Sel-X=1 means choice is     selected              ;
```

```
;                                                                    ;
;Choose one of the following combinations:                           ;
;                                                                    ;
; Sel-0=1     You are choosing to start the                         ;
; Sel-1=0     product automatically.                                ;
;                                                                    ;
; Sel-0=0     You are choosing to start the                         ;
; Sel-1=1     product manually.                                     ;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
Sel-0=1
Sel-1=0
;
;
;
;
[SdFinishReboot-0]
Result=1
;
;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;                                                                    ;
;   Information provided in this section relates to the              ;
;   "Setup Complete" dialog.                                         ;
;                                                                    ;
;******     BootOption = 0 "No I will restart my computer later"    ;
;          BootOption = 3 "Yes I want to restart my computer now";
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
BootOption=0
;
;
```

11. Complete the steps in the following section, “Using the Diskette to Start the Pristine Machine” to connect the pristine machine to SERVER1.

Using the Diskette to Start the Pristine Machine

This section explains how to connect the pristine machine to SERVER1 and how to start the pristine machine.

1. Insert the startup diskette you created in the disk drive on the pristine machine.
2. Switch on the pristine machine.

   The Windows 95 Setup starts.
3. Remove the diskette from Drive a: **before** you press **Enter** to continue.
4. Accept the Windows 95 Setup License agreement.
5. Do not specify a printer.
6. Skip the tutorial.
7. Manually reboot the machine when the installation of the TME 10 Software Distribution Client ends.

Chapter 9. Pristine Installation Scenario for a Windows 3.11 Client

This chapter describes a scenario in which the DOS and Windows 3.11 operating systems with Microsoft WIN32S, LAN Support Program (LSP), and the TME 10 Software Distribution for Windows 3.11 client are installed on a *pristine workstation* (a workstation that has no software installed.)

Installing DOS 6.1 and Windows 3.11 on a Pristine Workstation

This scenario describes how to install the following products on a pristine machine using a TME 10 Software Distribution for OS/2 server:

- DOS 6.1
- Windows 3.11 with the Microsoft WIN32S installed. The Microsoft WIN32S are available on a Microsoft Internet site.
- NetBIOS protocol provided by LAN Support Program (LSP) 1.36
- The TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 Client for Windows 3.11

Environment

The environment used in this scenario is a stand-alone NetBIOS network composed of:

- A TME 10 Software Distribution for Windows 3.11 client (CLI01)
- An ANXIFS server (IFS01)
- A TME 10 Software Distribution for OS/2 server (SERV01)
- A pristine workstation (CLI02)

This environment is illustrated in Figure 51 on page 170.

Prerequisites

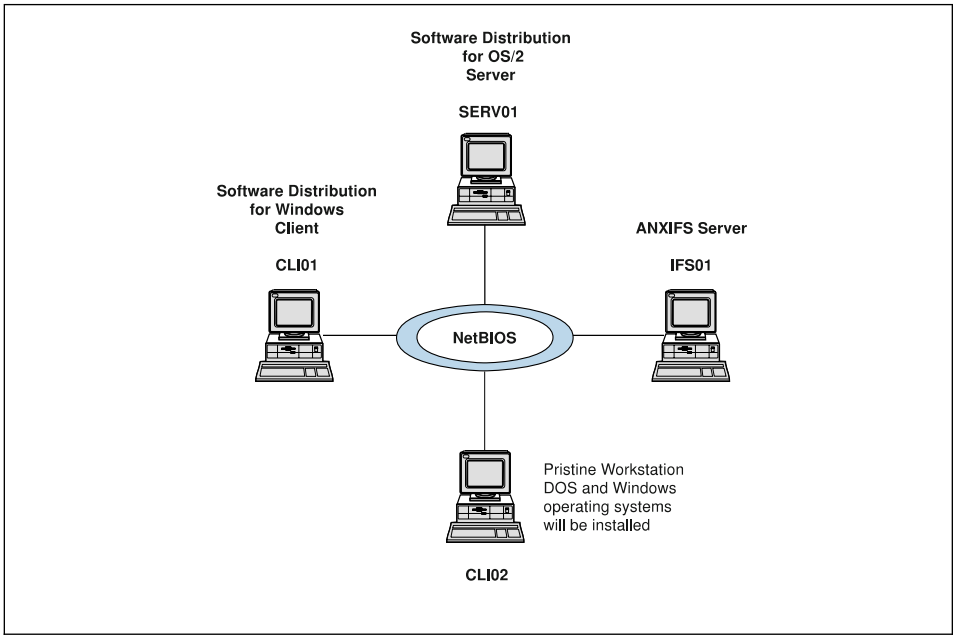


Figure 51. Pristine workstation installation scenario environment

To run this scenario you must use the following files:

- FNDPRST.EXE stored on the <CD-ROM>\SD4W31\PRIST31 directory of the XR21181 CSD
- ANXIFS client files stored on the <CD-ROM>\SD4W31\PRIST31\ANXIFS\CLIENT directory of the XR21181 CSD
- ANXIFS server files stored on the <CD-ROM>\SD4W31\PRIST31\ANXIFS\SERVER directory of the XR21181 CSD

To run this scenario you can use the following samples files that are stored on the <CD-ROM>\SD4W31\PRIST31 directory of the XR21181 CSD:

- AUTOEXEC.BAT
- CFGNB.BAT
- FDISK.KSF
- FORMAT.KSF
- FORMAT1.KSF
- CONFIG.SYS

Prerequisites

For this scenario it is assumed that:

- The following software is installed on the TME 10 Software Distribution for Windows 3.11 client workstation (CLI01)
  - The DOS 6.1 operating system on C:.

  - The Windows 3.11 operating system with the WIN32S on D:.
  - LSP 1.36 (from the LAN Server 4.0 package) on C:.
  - TME 10 Software Distribution for Windows 3.11 Client with the XR21181 CSD
  - The `C:\UTILITY\FNDPRST.EXE` file provided with the XR21181 CSD TME 10 Software Distribution for Windows 3.11 Client

- The following ANXIFS requester files are stored under C:\ANXIFS directory at CLI01:
  - ANXREQ.EXE
  - ANXIFS.MSG
  - FST2.INI
- At CLI01:
  - The DOS 6.1 CID Install utility is available.You can find it on the IBM PCTOOLS repository.
  - The LASTDRIVE=Z statement is in the CONFIG.SYS file.
  - The NetHeapSize=96 statement is under the 386Enh section in the WINDOWS\SYSTEM.INI file. NetHeapSize=96 is a suggested value. Depending on the environment, Windows 3.11 could request a different value.
  - Installation diskettes or CD-ROM are available for:
    - DOS 6.1
    - Windows 3.11
    - LSP 1.36
    - TME 10 Software Distribution for Windows 3.11 Client with the XR21181 CSD
  - Microsoft WIN32S available
- At the ANXIFS server, the following files are stored under the `C:\ANXIFS` directory:
  - ANXIFS.MSG
  - ANXIFSRV.EXE
  - ANXSRV.EXE
  - ANXSRV.INI
- The workstation CLI02 is a pristine machine.
- A blank diskette is available for the products you are installing.
- The ANXIFS server IFS01 has a minimum of 70 MB of free disk space.
- The pristine workstation uses drive `X:` to attach the directory in which the images are stored on the ANXIFS server IFS01.

Objectives

This scenario installs the products that are listed under “Installing DOS 6.1 and Windows 3.11 on a Pristine Workstation” on page 169 on a pristine workstation.

1. TME 10 Software Distribution for OS/2 and ANXIFS are started on the workstations SERV01 and IFS01 respectively.

2. The startup diskette required to start the pristine workstation is prepared at the TME 10 Software Distribution for Windows 3.11 client CLI01.
3. The Windows files and TME 10 Software Distribution for Windows 3.11 Client files are placed on the ANXIFS server IFS01.
4. DOS 6.1 and LSP 1.36 images are prepared remotely on the ANXIFS server IFS01.
5. Software packages are prepared at the TME 10 Software Distribution for Windows 3.11 client CLI01.
6. Change Management requests are submitted from the TME 10 Software Distribution for Windows 3.11 client CLI01 to the pristine workstation (CLI02).
7. The pristine workstation is started from the startup diskette.
8. The pristine hard drive is partitioned in two drives, C: and D:.
9. DOS 6.1, LSP 1.36, and TME 10 Software Distribution for Windows 3.11 are installed on the C: drive
10. Windows 3.11 and WIN32S are installed on the D: drive.

Step 1: Starting Up TME 10 Software Distribution for OS/2 and ANXIFS

1. At the TME 10 Software Distribution for OS/2 server SERV01, start TME 10 Software Distribution for OS/2 by entering the following command at the `C:` prompt:

   ```
   nvdm start
   ```

2. Switch to the ANXIFS server IFS01 and create the `ANXSRV.INI` file to specify your system requirements, before starting ANXIFS. You create the file under the `C:\ANXIFS` directory as follows:

   ```
   Adapter=0;
   Numclients=20
   Servername=IFS01
   Alias=rw,single,REMDRV,d:\
   ```

   where `d:\` is the drive to be shared on ANXIFS server.

3. From the `C:\ANXIFS` prompt, start ANXIFS by entering the command:

   ```
   ANXSRV START @ANXSRV.INI
   ```

Step 2: Preparing the Startup Diskette at the CLI01 TME 10 Software Distribution for Windows 3.11. Client

This step explains how to prepare the startup diskette that can be used on any pristine workstation. You prepare the startup diskette using the DOSDISK utility provided with DOS 6.1 CID Install utility.

1. At the TME 10 Software Distribution for Windows 3.11 client CLI01, copy the `DOSDISK.COM` and `DOSDISK.INI` files from the DOS 6.1 CID Install utility to the `C:\DOS` directory.

2. Copy the DOS system files by entering the following commands:

```
ATTRIB -S -H -R c:\IBMBIO.COM
ATTRIB -S -H -R c:\IBMDOS.COM

COPY C:\IBMBIO.COM C:\DOS\*.*
COPY C:\IBMDOS.COM C:\DOS\*.*

ATTRIB +S +H +R c:\IBMBIO.COM
ATTRIB +S +H +R c:\IBMDOS.COM
```

3. Use the DOSDISK utility to copy a minimal DOS package to the startup diskette.

   You provide three parameters to the DOSDISK utility:

   - The drive where the startup diskette is prepared
   - The directory where the DOS operating system runs, on CLI01
   - A file (called `extras` in this scenario) containing a list of files to be copied to the diskette, as follows:

     ```
     C:\WINA20.386
     C:\ANXIFS\ANXREQ.EXE
     C:\ANXIFS\ANXIFS.MSG
     C:\ANXIFS\FST2.INI
     C:\UTILITY\FNDPRST.EXE
     C:\DOS\SHARE.EXE
     ```

     Note: `C:\ANXIFS\FST2.INI` is the requester .INI file containing the following parameters:

     ```
     adapter=0
     attach=X,IFS01,REMDRV
     execute=A:\CFGNB.BAT
     ```

     where:

     – `0` is the adapter number of the pristine workstation
     – `X` is the letter used to attach the remote drive on the ANXIFS server.
     – `IFS01` is the name of the ANXIFS server
     – `REMDRV` is the alias name of the shared drive on the ANXIFS server
     – `A:\CFGNB.BAT` is the batch file for configuring the pristine workstation.

4. Enter the following command from the `C:\DOS` directory:

   ```
   DOSDISK A: C:\DOS EXTRAS
   ```

5. When you are prompted to format another diskette, type:

   ```
   N
   ```

6. We partition the pristine hard drive in two C: and D: logical drives. Leave the startup diskette in the `A:` drive, and use an editor to create the keystroke files `FDISK.KSF`, `FORMAT.KSF` and `FORMAT1.KSF` on the diskette:

   - FDISK.KSF.

```
1
1
N
50
<new line>
<Alt 27>2
1
<Alt 27>1
2
<new line>
<Alt 27>
<new line>
<Alt 27><Alt 27>
```

<Alt 27> is the escape character. 50 is the size of the C: drive in Mega bytes. The space that remain on the hard disk is used for the D: drive.

- FORMAT.KSF

  ```
  Y
  PRISTINE
  ```

- FORMAT1.KSF

  ```
  Y
  WINDRIVE
  ```

This step is optional. You create the keystroke files to do an unattended configuration of the pristine workstation. The keys that you specify in the files are the same ones that you would provide in an interactive process.

7. Create the AUTOEXEC.BAT file by entering the following command:

   ```
   EDIT A:\AUTOEXEC.BAT
   ```

   The following is an example of AUTOEXEC.BAT file:

   ```
   @echo off
   PROMPT $p$g
   path a:\;d:\windows;x:\ibmnvdma\bin;
   share
   SET TEMP=\DOS
   @echo ----begin of steps to create and format the C: partition----
   IF EXIST fdisk.ksf GOTO LB1
   copy check.key fdisk.ksf
   del check.key
   a:\format c: <format.ksf
   a:\format d: <format1.ksf
   GOTO LB2
   :LB1
   IF EXIST C:\DOS\COMMAND.COM GOTO LB2
   @echo exist?>c:\file
   IF EXIST C:\file GOTO ERR
   ren fdisk.ksf check.key
   a:\fdisk < check.key
   :LB2
   @echo on
   ```

```
@echo  --end of the steps to create and format the C: partition---
A:\FNDPRST.EXE
CALL FNDPRST.BAT
rem ---------------------- settings NVDMA agent
SET NVDMBASE=X:\IBMNVDMA
SET FNDCFG=C:\%clientname%
SET FNDPRISTINE=1
SET FNDBOOT=YES
SET FNDUSER=root
set path=%FNDCFG%;%PATH%
rem ---------------------- settings NVDMA agent

rem _____________ begin check if the diskette has been removed
                  during the activate process
IF NOT EXIST C:\SOFTDIST\NVDM.CFG GOTO CONTINUE1

@echo YOU FORGOT TO REMOVE THE DISKETTE DURING REBOOT.
@echo PLEASE REMOVE THE DISKETTE
@echo AND REBOOT THE MACHINE
GOTO END

rem _____________ end check if the diskette has been removed during

:CONTINUE1

@echo ----start ANXIFS requester ------
anxreq start %clientname% @fst2.ini
GOTO END

:ERR

@echo YOU MUST DELETE the C: PARTITION IF ALREADY EXIST
             BEFORE YOU RUN THE PRISTINE SCENARIO
:END
```

where:

- The `FNDPRST.EXE` file prompts you for:
  - The name of the client. It can be a maximum of 8 characters long to allow the creation of a local directory with the same name (for example `CLI02`).
  - The address of the client (for example `CLI02`)
  - The name of the server (for example `SERV01`)
  - The address of the server (for example `SERV01`)

8. Create the `CONFIG.SYS` file by entering the following command:

   ```
   EDIT A:\CONFIG.SYS
   ```

   Use the following format to create the `CONFIG.SYS` file:

```
SHELL=A:\COMMAND.COM /E:2048 /P
DEVICE=A:\SETVER.EXE
DEVICE=A:\HIMEM.SYS
DOS=HIGH
FILES=50
BUFFERS=40
LASTDRIVE=X
```

9. Using the LSP 1.36 installation diskette, run the `DXMAID.EXE` file to install the NetBIOS protocol on the startup diskette. Choose the appropriate option to copy only NetBIOS.

10. Create the `CFGNB.BAT` file by entering the following command:

    ```
    EDIT A:\CFGNB.BAT
    ```

    Use the following format to create the `CFGNB.BAT` file:

    ```
    md c:\%clientname%
    md c:\%clientname%\service
    md c:\%clientname%\backup
    md c:\%clientname%\backup\uninst
    md c:\%clientname%\work
    md c:\%clientname%\repos
    md c:\%clientname%\uicfg
    md c:\%clientname%\bin
    del c:\%clientname%\nvdm.cfg

    echo WORKSTATION NAME:        %clientname%>c:\%clientname%\nvdm.cfg
    echo SERVER:                  %servername% NBI%server_address%>> ►
                                  c:\%clientname%\nvdm.cfg
    echo PROTOCOL:                NBI %client_address% 0 50 ►
                                   >>c:\%clientname%\nvdm.cfg
    echo REPOSITORY:              c:\%clientname%\REPOS ►
                                   >>c:\%clientname%\nvdm.cfg
    echo WORK AREA:               c:\%clientname%\WORK ►
                                   >>c:\%clientname%\nvdm.cfg.

    echo BACKUP AREA:             c:\%clientname%\BACKUP ►
                                   >>c:\%clientname%\nvdm.cfg.

    echo SERVICE AREA:            c:\%clientname%\SERVICE ►
                                   >>c:\%clientname%\nvdm.cfg
    echo CONFIGURATION:           CLIENT>>c:\%clientname%\nvdm.cfg
    echo MESSAGE LOG LEVEL:       D>>c:\%clientname%\nvdm.cfg
    echo LOG FILE SIZE:           524288>>c:\%clientname%\nvdm.cfg
    echo API TRACE FILE SIZE:     524288>>c:\%clientname%\nvdm.cfg
    echo TRACE FILE SIZE:         524288>>c:\%clientname%\nvdm.cfg
    echo MACHINE TYPE:            WINDOWS>>c:\%clientname%\nvdm.cfg
    echo MAX USER INTERFACES:     20>>c:\%clientname%\nvdm.cfg
    echo MAX ATTEMPTS:            5>>c:\%clientname%\nvdm.cfg
    echo TARGET MODE:             PUSH>>c:\%clientname%\nvdm.cfg
    echo TARGET ADDRESS:          %client_address% ►
                                   >>c:\%clientname%\nvdm.cfg
    ```

```
copy %NVDMBASE%\BIN\FNDCMAM.EXE   c:\%FNDCFG%\bin\FNDCMAM.EXE
copy %NVDMBASE%\BIN\FNDCMT.EXE    c:\%FNDCFG%\bin\FNDCMT.EXE
copy %NVDMBASE%\BIN\FNDINIT.EXE   c:\%FNDCFG%\bin\FNDINIT.EXE
copy %NVDMBASE%\BIN\FNDCOACT.DLL  c:\%FNDCFG%\bin\FNDCOACT.DLL
copy %NVDMBASE%\FNDCOMSG.CAT      c:\%FNDCFG%\FNDCOMSG.CAT
del  %NVDMBASE%\FNDACT

%NVDMBASE%\BIN\FNDCMWIN

IF EXIST D:\WINDOWS\SYSTEM\WIN32S\WIN32S.EXE GOTO SKIPWIN
xcopy X:\IMGS\WINCOPY\*.* D:\WINDOWS\*.* /s /e /v

ren A:\AUTOEXEC.BAT AUTOEXEC.BAK
echo D:\WINDOWS\SMARTDRV.EXE > A:\AUTOEXEC.BAT
type A:\AUTOEXEC.BAK >> A:\AUTOEXEC.BAT
del A:\AUTOEXEC.BAK
echo DEVICE=D:\WINDOWS\SMARTDRV.EXE /DOUBLE_BUFFER >> A:\CONFIG.SYS

:SKIPWIN

IF EXIST C:\DOS\COMMAND.COM GOTO SKIPDOS
x:\imgs\dos61\usetup /r:x:\imgs\dos61\dos61.rsp
:SKIPDOS

IF EXIST c:\%clientname%\UPDATE GOTO NOUPDATE
ren  C:\AUTOEXEC.BAT AUTOEXEC.BAK
echo D:\WINDOWS\SMARTDRV.EXE > C:\AUTOEXEC.BAT
type C:\AUTOEXEC.BAK >> C:\AUTOEXEC.BAT
echo SHARE >> C:\AUTOEXEC.BAT
echo PATH=%%PATH%%;D:\WINDOWS >> C:\AUTOEXEC.BAT
del  C:\AUTOEXEC.BAK
echo DEVICE=D:\WINDOWS\SMARTDRV.EXE /DOUBLE_BUFFER >> C:\CONFIG.SYS
echo update done > c:\%clientname%\updated
:NOUPDATE

win
```

Note: The last statement, `win`, to start the Windows operating system, is required. You must start Windows using the `CFGNB.BAT` file because using it saves all the variable settings that are used to start the remote TME 10 Software Distribution for Windows 3.11 client.

Step 3: Placing the Windows Files on the ANXIFS Serv

er

At the TME 10 Software Distribution for OS/2 client CLI01:

1. Start the ANXIFS Requester by entering the following commands from the C: drive:

```
cd \ANXIFS

ANXREQ START CLI01 @FST2.INI
```

Note: You can reuse the FST2.INI file created for pristine diskette, but remember to comment the `execute` statement with a semicolon.

(To see a list of the files that are under the `X` drive, use the `DIR .\` command.)

2. Create the following directory remotely:

   ```
   MD X:\IMGS
   ```

3. Be sure that the Windows operating system is not currently running, and enter the following command:

   ```
   XCOPY D:\WINDOWS\*.* X:\IMGS\WINCOPY\*.* /S /E /V
   ```

Step 4: Placing the TME 10 Software Distribution for Windows 3.11 Client Files on the ANXIFS Server

At the TME 10 Software Distribution for Windows 3.11 client CLI01, enter the following command:

```
XCOPY C:\SOFTDIST\*.* X:\IBMNVDMA\*.* /S /E /V
```

where `C:\SOFTDIST` is the directory in which the TME 10 Software Distribution for Windows 3.11 Client was installed on CLI01.

Step 5: Preparing the Images at the ANXIFS Server

At the TME 10 Software Distribution for Windows 3.11 client CLI01:

1. Create the following directory remotely:

   ```
   MD X:\LOGS
   ```

2. Create the DOS 6.1 image, by inserting the first of the DOS 6.1 installation diskettes in the diskette drive, and entering:

   ```
   A:\SETUP /A
   ```

   You are prompted to specify the directory in which the DOS files will be installed. Type:

   ```
   X:\IMGS\DOS61
   ```

   From the CID install utility, copy the following files to the `X:\IMGS\DOS61` directory:

   - USETUP.COM
   - USETUP1.OVL
   - USETUP.INI
   - SAMPLE.RSP
   - README.CID
   - DOSDISK.COM
   - DOSDISK.INI

3. Copy the SAMPLE.RSP file as DOS61.RSP, and customize it to reflect your installation requirements. It is suggested that you name the log file as X:\LOGS\DOS61.ERR.

4. Create the LSP 1.36 image, by inserting the LSP 1.36 installation diskette into the diskette drive, and entering:

   ```
   XCOPY A:\*.* X:\IMGS\LSP136\*.* /S /E /V
   ```

5. Create the response file X:\IMGS\LSP136\SAMPLES\IBMTOK.RSP based on the samples provided under the SAMPLES directory of LSP.

   The sample file that follows applies to an IBM token-ring adapter:

   ```
   * This response file installs IBMTOK.DOS and DXMJ0MOD.SYS and does
   * not migrate any existing LSP parameters.
   * CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT will be placed in the root of the C: drive.
   *
   INST_SECTION = (
      ; Do not use the input configuration for LSP driver parameters.
      MigrateControlFiles = 0

      ; Do not check the LAN adapters installed.
      AdapterCheck = 0

      ; Define target location for LSP files.
      TargetPath = c:\lsp136

      ; DriverDiskPath specifies where the files normally found on the
      ; Driver Diskette (Option Diskette) are located.
      ; Change DRIVERS to the location of your NIF, NDIS MAC driver, etc.
      ; Note: DRIVERS is not fully qualified, so it will be searched for
      ;  1) in the current directory
      ;  2) as a subdirectory off of the LSP source path
      DriverDiskPath = DOS
      )

   ; Specify bindings.  The protocol stack is DXMJ0MOD.SYS.
   PROT_SECTION = (
      ; The following statement specifies the DXMJ0MOD.SYS driver name
      DriverName = NETBEUI$

      ; Change IBMTOK_MOD to the bracketed module name for the PROTOCOL.INI
      ; section for the NDIS MAC driver you are using.
      bindings = IBMTOK_MOD

      ; Turn off piggy-backed acknowledgements.
      PiggyBackAcks = 0

      )
   ```

6. Create the D:\SD_IMG directory that contains the TME 10 Software Distribution for Windows 3.11 Client with the XR21181 CSD images. Then enter the following command:

   ```
   XCOPY D:\SD_IMG\*.* X:\IMGS\NVDMA /S /E /V
   ```

Step 6: Preparing Product Packages at the CLI01 TME 10 Software Distribution for OS/2 Client

1. Create the following directory:

   ```
   MD D:\PROFILES
   ```

2. Create the batch file D:\PROFILES\LSP136.BAT that is used to install LSP 1.36, as follows:

   ```
   X:\IMGS\LSP136\DXMAID.EXE ►
   /R:X:\IMGS\LSP136\SAMPLES\IBMTOK.RSP ►
   /X /L1:X:\LOGS\LSP.LOG
   ```

3. Create the batch file D:\PROFILES\TMEBURN.BAT that is used to delete the temporary local directory C:\%clientname% on the pristine machine.

   ```
   deltree /y c:\%1
   ```

4. Create the software object profile D:\PROFILES\NVDMA.PRF, as follows:

   ```
   GLOBAL NAME:       IBM.NVDMA.CLIENT.REF.1


   DESCRIPTION:       Software Object for Windows Client
   CHANGE FILE TYPE:  WINCID
   AUTHORIZE:         ALL

   POSTREQ COMMAND:   FNDEND.BAT

   INSTALL PROGRAM:
     PROGRAM NAME: X:\IMGS\NVDMA\INSTALL.EXE
     PARAMETERS:   /S:X:\IMGS\NVDMA /R:X:\IMGS\NVDMA\NVDMA.RSP ►
                   /A:I /X /L1:X:\LOGS\NVDMA.LOG
   ```

5. Create the X:\IMG\NVDMA\NVDMA.RSP response file, as follows:

```
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
; TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 for Windows 3.11 Response File ;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;

; Target path
FILE = C:\SOFTDIST

; Work area
; It's the path for the data directory
WORK = C:\SOFTDIST

; TME 10 Software Distribution components to install
COMP = Distribution Client
; COMP = Distribution Client Mobile
; COMP = Distribution GUI
; COMP = Distribution Documentation
; COMP = HW/SW Discovery tool

UNATTENDED   = "1"
DELETEBACKUP = No
SAVEBACKUP   = Yes
CFGUPDATE    = Auto
OVERWRITE    = Yes
PROTOCOL     = NBI
SERVERNAME   = serv01
SERVERADDR   = serv01
WRKNAME      = cli02
WRKADDR      = cli02
TRGADDR      = cli02
```

6. Start Windows 3.11
7. Start the TME 10 Software Distribution for Windows 3.11 command line interface. At the Windows Run, type:

   ```
   NVDM
   ```

   or double click on the TME 10 Software Distribution Command Line icon
8. Enter the following commands:

   ```
   cat LSP136.BAT D:\PROFILES\LSP136.BAT -o PROC
   cat TMEBURN.BAT D:\PROFILES\TMEBURN.BAT -o PROC

   send LSP136.BAT SERV01
   send TMEBURN.BAT SERV01

   bld D:\PROFILES\NVDMA.PRF
   ```

Step 7: Submitting the Change Management Requests

To submit the change management requests commands, the CLI02 client must be defined to the SERV01 server.

After you start the pristine workstation CLI02 as described in Step 8, check in the server log file to see whether the CLI02 client autoregistered itself, or enter the following command if you do not want to wait for the client autoregistration:

```
addtg CLI02 -s CLI02 -ld -y WINDOWS -tp nbi:CLI02
```

At the TME 10 Software Distribution for Windows 3.11 client CLI01, submit the install request for the pristine workstation CLI02 by entering the command:

```
exec LSP136.BAT -w CLI02
inst IBM.NVDMA.CLIENT.REF.1 -n -w CLI02
act -w CLI02 -f
exec TMEBURN.BAT -a CLI02 -w CLI02
```

Step 8: Starting Up the Pristine Workstation

At the pristine workstation:

1. Insert the startup diskette into the diskette drive.
2. Turn the power on.

   When Windows 3.11 comes up, the FNDCMPS agent executable will start automatically. The unattended installation now begins. At the end of the TME 10 Software Distribution installation, the workstation will reboot twice. Remove the pristine diskette during the first reboot.

Note: You can use the same startup diskette to start another pristine workstation, only if you delete the `FNDPRST.BAT` file from the diskette and the following statements from the related files:

- `D:\WINDOWS\SMARTDRIVE.EXE`

  in AUTOEXEC.BAT.

- `DEVICE=D:\WINDOWS\SMARTDRIVE.EXE /DOUBLE BUFFER`

  in CONFIG.SYS

Chapter 10. NetView DM/2 2.1 to TME 10 Software Distribution for OS/2 Migration Scenario

This scenario explains how to migrate from the NetView DM/2 2.1 product to the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 for OS/2.

Environment

The following is the environment used in this scenario:

- A LAN with a NetView DM/2 2.1 server connected to a NetView DM for MVS 1.6.1 focal point through LU 6.2
- The NetView DM/2 2.1 server connected with its clients through NetBIOS
- The preparation site is a NetView DM/2 2.1 server connected to a NetView DM for MVS 1.6.1 focal point.

The following steps apply, if not otherwise specified, to the OS/2, AIX, NetWare, and Windows NT environments for the server platform, and to NetBIOS and TCP/IP connection protocols for Client/Server connections. The migration applies to each LAN selected to be migrated.

Note:

- If the object that you want to move from NetView DM/2 2.1 to the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 catalog is a change file and its object type is FLATDATA, it is re-cataloged in TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 as a SOFTWARE object type.
- You must use TCP/IP as the Client/Server protocol that connects TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 clients to an AIX server workstation.
- Only cataloged and INRU objects can be moved from NetView DM/2 2.1 to the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 database.

Prerequisites

Before beginning this scenario be sure that you have performed the following tasks:

- Completed all the NetView DM/2 2.1 and NetView DM for MVS 1.6.1 plans that are still in progress.
- Performed an activate request to change the status of all the objects from IRA to IRU or INRA to INRU.
- Performed an accept request to change the status of all the objects from IRU to INRU.
- Downloaded the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 prerequisite products to the NetView DM/2 2.1 preparation site.

- Downloaded the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 CID code images plus the the XR21382 CSD to the NetView DM/2 2.1 preparation site as described in the XR21382 CSD README file available with the product.
- Installed the R8200 level or later of MPTS and
  he UN57064 level or later of NFS using NetView DM/2

  Make sure that you have installed the MPTS protocol stacks both for TCP/IP and NetBIOS on every workstation in the LAN. This is necessary because the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 (which uses TCP/IP and NetBIOS frames) and NetView DM/2 (which uses NetBIOS frames) will be running simultaneously in a client/server environment during the migration.
- Installed NetView DM/2 2.1 and the related images at level 5. You reach level 5 by applying the XREFP03 package.

  If the image root directory is SHARE_A\IMG, the product CID directory image structure is as follows:

```
SHARE_A\IMG\|
        |  |\SD40S2\|
        |           |\PRISTINE
        |           |\SAMPLES\
        |                    |\NVDM2\|
        |                                |\NETBIOS
        |                                |\TCPIP
        |           |\TOOLS
        |           |\IMAGES
        |                    |.
        |                    |..
        |                    | EPFISINC.PKG
        |                    | INSTALL.EXE
        |                    | INSTALL.IN_
        |                    | NVDMCAT.ICF
        |                    | NVDMDSC.DSC
        |                    | NVDMPKG.PKG
        |                    | SDISTCLT.RSP
        |                    | NVDMPKG.OKG
        |                    | NVDMPKG.NKG
        |                    |\CLT
        |                    |\DSKCAM
        |                    |\MOB
        |                    |\NETFIN
        |                    |\PREPCLT
        |                    |\PREPSRV
        |                    |\SRV
        |
        |\RSP\|
        |         |\SD40S2
        |\PRO
```

Be sure to unpack all the zip package files stored under the subdirectories.

Migration Part One: Preparing Objects

This part explains how to prepare the response files, the change file profiles, and the change files that you need to run this scenario. You must perform these tasks at a NetView DM/2 preparation site.

The samples of TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 response files are stored in the SAMPLES\NVDM2\NETBIOS or in the SAMPLES\NVDM2\TCPIP depending on the environment in which you run the scenario.

The samples of the NetView DM/2 change file profiles are stored in the SAMPLES\NVDM2 directory.

Step 1. Prepare the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 response files for the server and the client to perform a CID installation in a TCP/IP and NetBIOS environment In this scenario we used the `<workstation name>.rsp name` to create a unique change file for the CID installation.

Step 2. Store the response files in the CID_IMG\RSP subdirectory.

Because NetView DM/2 is case sensitive for workstation names, logical units, networkid, etc., you must use upper case for the names in the response file.

- **TCP/IP Only**

  The example of server response files you must use if the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5. server has to be installed on an OS/2 machine follows. If the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5. server is installed on an AIX workstation use the client response file only.

```
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;; DESCRIPTION: Software Distribution Server Response File TCP/IP Protocol ;;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
FNDNOTC=YES

; Target path
FILE = D:\SOFTDIST

; Work area
WORK = D:\SOFTDIST

; Software Distribution components to install
COMP = Distribution Server
COMP = Distribution Server GUI
COMP = Distribution Server Documentation
COMP = Hw/Sw Discovery Tool

DELETEBACKUP = No
SAVEBACKUP   = Yes
CFGUPDATE    = Auto
OVERWRITE    = No
```

```
; Software distribution System Name. This identify the system in the network
; mandatory
SystemName   = LT0235A0

; Network drivers and Network addresses
; You may specify four types of Driver keywords. The value used is 1 or 0.
; Parm1 keyword is required for NETBIOS and SERIPC Driver.
; mandatory
Driver.TCPIP = 1

; To have the possibility to define remote servers. Value may be YES or NO
EnableRemoteCommunication = YES

; SDS Local Domain address. Default value is the SystemName
; It is up 8 characters long
LocalDomainAddress = LT0235A0

; SDS Local Target address. It must be equal to the LocalDomainAddress
; It is up 8 characters long
LocalTargetAddress = LT0235A0

; The following group, beginning with DomainAddress0 and ending
; with AutomatedTargetAction0, defines a remote server.
; You can define more than one remote server increasing the number
; at the end of the string

; Domain name. Can be up to 8 characters long. Can be defined more than one.
; You can use the * for the domain name.
; It is mandatory if you want to define a remote target.
DomainAddress0 = ITIBM0PC

; Specifies the identifier of the server. Can be up to 8 characters long
; You can define more than one identifier.
; You can use the * for the server identifier.
; It is mandatory if you want to define a remote target.
TargetAddress0 = D3C73D01

; Specifies the Protocol.
Protocol0 = APPC

; Specifies the Alias for the LUname. Can be up to 8 characters long.
LUAlias0 = LT0235A0

; Specifies the mode. Can be up to 8 characters long.
ModeName0 = LU62

; Specifies the identifier of the remote network.
; Can be up to 8 characters long.
; It makes sense only if you specify
; Protocol=APPC and it is mandatory if DomainAddress= *)
RemoteNetworkId0 = ITIBM0PC
```

```
; Specifies the identifier of the remote LUname.
; Can be up to 8 characters long.
; It makes sense only if Protocol=APPC and it is mandatory if
; TargetAddress = *)
RemoteLUName0 = D3C73D01

; Specifies the remote network address. Can be up to 8 characters long.
; It make sense only if Protocol=TCP/IP
; RemoteHostName0 = $(RemoteHostName0)

; Specifies if the server is a focal point.
; Only one server can be defined as focal point. The value can be YES or NO
FocalPoint0 = YES
```

The key FNDNOTC=YES is set in the response file so that the `config.sys` is updated with the statement SET FNDNOTC=YES. This statement prevents the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 transmission controller component from starting when TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 starts after installation. This prevents from communication problems when the NetView DM/2 and the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 products are simultaneously active.

An example of the client response file to use if you are in a TCP/IP environment follows:

```
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;; DESCRIPTION: Software Distribution Client Response File TCP/IP Protocol ;;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
; Target path
FILE = C:\SOFTDIST

; Work area
; It is the path for the data directory
WORK = C:\SOFTDIST

; Software Distribution components to install
COMP = Distribution Client

DELETEBACKUP = No
SAVEBACKUP   = Yes
CFGUPDATE    = Auto
OVERWRITE    = Yes

; Software Distribution System Name. This identify the system in the network
; mandatory
SystemName   = BBW998

; Network drivers and Network addresses
; You may specify five types of Driver keywords. The value used is 1 or 0.
; Parm1 keyword is required for NETBIOS Driver.
; mandatory
Driver.TCPIP = 1

; Distribution Server's System Name
ServerName = LT0235A0

; Network driver and Distribution Server's address (TCP/IP for TCP/IP,
; NB for NETBIOS, TLI for IPX)
ServerDriver  = TCP/IP
ServerAddress = p56psb0
TCP.Hostname  = lt0041a0
TargetAddress = BBW998
```

- **NetBIOS Only**

  The example of server response file you must use if you are in a NetBIOS environment follows:

```
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;; DESCRIPTION: Software Distribution Server Response File NetBIOS Protocol ;;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
FNDNOTC=YES

; Target path
FILE = D:\SOFTDIST

; Work area
WORK = D:\SOFTDIST
```

```
; Software Distribution components to install
COMP = Distribution Server
COMP = Distribution Server GUI
COMP = Distribution Server Documentation
COMP = Hw/Sw Discovery Tool

DELETEBACKUP = No
SAVEBACKUP   = Yes
CFGUPDATE    = Auto
OVERWRITE    = No

; Software distribution System Name. This identify the system in the network
; mandatory
SystemName   = LT0235A0

; Network drivers and Network addresses
; You may specify four types of Driver keywords. The value used is 1 or 0.
; Parm1 keyword is required for NETBIOS and SERIPC Driver.
; mandatory
Driver.NETBIOS = 1
Parm1.NETBIOS  = LT0235A0

; To have the possibility to define remote servers. Value may be YES or NO
EnableRemoteCommunication = YES

; SDS Local Domain address. Default value is the SystemName
; It is up 8 characters long
LocalDomainAddress = LT0235A0

; SDS Local Target address. It must be equal to LocalDomainAddress
; It is up 8 characters long
LocalTargetAddress = LT0235A0

; The following group, beginning with DomainAddress0 and ending
; with AutomatedTargetAction0, defines a remote server.
; You can define more than one remote server increasing the number
; at the end of the string

; Domain name. Can be up to 8 characters long.
; You can define more than one domain.
; You can use the * for the domain name.
; It is mandatory if you want to define remote target.
DomainAddress0 = ITIBM0PC

; Specifies the identifier of the server. Can be up to 8 characters long
; You can define more than one server identifier.
; You can use the * for the server identifier
; It is mandatory if you want to define a remote target.
TargetAddress0 = D3C73D01

; Specifies the Protocol.
Protocol0 = APPC
```

```
; Specifies the Alias for the Luname. Can be up to 8 characters long.
LUAlias0 = LT0235A0
; Specifies the mode. Can be up to 8 characters long.
ModeName0 = LU62

; Specifies the identifier of the remote network.
; Can be up to 8 characters long.
; It make sense only if Protocol=APPC
; It is mandatory if DomainAddress = *)
RemoteNetworkId0 = ITIBM0PC

; Specifies the identifier of the remote LUname.
; Can be up to 8 characters long.
; It make sense only if Protocol=APPC.
; It is mandatory if TargetAddres= *)
RemoteLUName0 = D3C73D01

; Specifies if the server is a focal point.
; Only one server can be defined as focal point. The value can be YES or NO
FocalPoint0 = YES
```

The key FNDNOTC=YES is set in the response file so that the config.sys is updated with the statement SET FNDNOTC=YES. This statement prevents the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 transmission controller component from starting when TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 starts after installation. This prevents communication problems when the NetView DM/2 and the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 products are simultaneously active.

An example of the client response file to use if you are in a NetBIOS environment follows:

```
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
;; DESCRIPTION: Software Distribution Client Response File NetBIOS Protocol ;;
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;

; Target path
FILE = C:\SOFTDIST

; Work area
; It is the path for the data directory
WORK = C:\SOFTDIST

; Software Distribution components to install
COMP = Distribution Client

DELETEBACKUP = No
SAVEBACKUP   = Yes
CFGUPDATE    = Auto
OVERWRITE    = Yes

; Software Distribution System Name. This identify the system in the network
; mandatory
SystemName   = BBW998

; Network drivers and Network addresses
; You may specify five types of Driver keywords. The value used is 1 or 0.
; Parm1 keyword is required for NETBIOS Driver.
; mandatory
Driver.NETBIOS = 1
Parm1.NETBIOS = BBW998

; Software Distribution Server Connection

; Distribution Server's System Name
ServerName = LT0235A0

; Network driver (TCP/IP for TCP/IP, NB for NETBIOS, TLI for IPX)
ServerDriver = NB

; Distribution Server's address (hostname for TCP/IP, NETBIOS/IPX address
; for NETBIOS/IPX)
ServerAddress = LT0235A0
```

Step 3. Prepare the change file profiles containing the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 CID images using the INSTIMG.PRO change file profile (stored in the SAMPLES\NVDM2 directory) that follows:

```
TARGETDIR=SA:\
SECTION CATALOG
 BEGIN
  OBJECTTYPE=SOFTWARE
  GLOBALNAME=TME10.SD.IMAGES.REF.1
 END

SECTION FILESPECLIST
BEGIN
  \IMG\SD4OS2\*.* /IS
END
```

Step 4. Prepare the change file profiles that contain the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 response files, using the INSTRSP.PRO change file profile (stored in the SAMPLES\NVDM2 directory) that follows:

```
TARGETDIR=SA:\
SECTION CATALOG
 BEGIN
  OBJECTTYPE=SOFTWARE
  GLOBALNAME=TME10.SD.RSPFILES.REF.1
 END

SECTION FILESPECLIST
BEGIN
  \RSP\SD4OS2\*.*
END
```

Step 5. Build the change files to install the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 client and server using the SDINSCLT.PRO change file profile that follows. The `sdinsclt.pro` file is stored in the SAMPLES\NVDM2 directory.

```
TARGETDIR=D:\
section catalog
 BEGIN
   OBJECTTYPE = SOFTWARE
   globalname = IBM.TME10.CLIENT.REF.1
 END

section install
BEGIN
 PROGRAM       = $(SOURCEDIR)\INSTALL.EXE
 PARMS         = /s:$(SOURCEDIR) /r:$(RESPONSEFILE) /L1:$(logfile1) ►
                 /L2:$(logfile2) /A:I/
 SOURCEDIR     = SA:\img\sd4os2\images
 RESPONSEFILE  = SA:\rsp\sd4os2\$(WORKSTATNAME).RSP
 logfile1      = SA:\LOGS\$(WORKSTATNAME).lg1
 logfile2      = SA:\LOGS\$(WORKSTATNAME).lg2
END
```

If you are not using a server on OS/2 platform ship the following step and go to „Prepare the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 NDF file“

Step 6. TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 Server on OS/2 Platform Only

An example of a server change file profile follows. Sample of server change file profiles are provided in the sdinssrv.pro file. The sdinssrv.pro file is stored in the SAMPLES\NVDM2 directory.

```
TARGETDIR=D:\
SECTION CATALOG
 BEGIN
   OBJECTTYPE = SOFTWARE
   GLOBALNAME = IBM.TME10.SERVER.REF.1
 END
SECTION INSTALL
BEGIN
 PROGRAM = $(SOURCEDIR)\INSTALL.EXE
 PARMS   = /s:$(SOURCEDIR) /r:$(RESPONSEFILE) /L1:$(logfile1) ►
           /L2:$(logfile2) /A:I/X
 SOURCEDIR      = SA:\img\sd4os2\images
 RESPONSEFILE   = SA:\rsp\sd4os2\$(WORKSTATNAME).RSP
 logfile1       = SA:\LOGS\$(WORKSTATNAME).lg1
 logfile2       = SA:\LOGS\$(WORKSTATNAME).lg2
END
```

Step 7. Prepare the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 NDF File

This step applies only if you are running the scenario using a TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5. OS/2 server, if you are using an AIX server skip this step and go to „Use the UPDCATLG.PRO Change File Profile“.

a. Prepare the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 NDF file of the Communication Manager as described in the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 *Quick Beginnings* manual.

b. Build the change file containing the new NDF file to be replaced on the target server

   A sample of the NDF change file profile is contained in NDFFILE.PRO. An example of this change file profile follows:

```
TARGETDIR=C:\CMLIB

SECTION CATALOG
 BEGIN
    OBJECTTYPE = SOFTWARE
    GLOBALNAME = NEW.NDF.FOR.LT0235A0.REF.1
 END

SECTION FILESPECLIST
 BEGIN
    PXPS0235.NDF
 END
```

c. To validate and update the new configuration, build a change file that contains the invocation to the CMVERIFY command in the install section.

A sample of the change file profile is contained in NDFGFG.PRO, which follows:

```
TARGETDIR=C:\CMLIB

SECTION CATALOG
 BEGIN
  OBJECTTYPE = SOFTWARE
  GLOBALNAME = VERIFY.NEW.NDF.FOR.LT0235A0.REF.1
 END

SECTION INSTALL
BEGIN
  PROGRAM = $(TARGETDIR)\CMVERIFY.EXE
  PARMS   = $(TARGETDIR)\PXPS0235
END
```

Step 8. Use the UPDCATLG.PRO Change File Profile

- **On an AIX Server**

  This step explains how to prepare a change file profile to install and execute the FNDMIGTC.EXE utility. This utility transfers the information in the NetView DM/2 2.1 catalog entries from the NetView DM/2 2.1 to TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5. This utility requires the log file name, and the SEND input parameters.

  You specify the SEND parameter to send to the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 for AIX server workstation the cataloged objects. The FNDMIGGTC.EXE utility is stored in the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5. product image\tools subdirectory. It interacts with the cdm list * /Ws NetView DM/2 command to identify the entries to be translated in the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 catalog. Only the cataloged and INRU entries are considered.

  If the object that you want to move from NetView DM/2 2.1 to TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 catalog is a change file and its object type is FLATDATA, it is re-cataloged in TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 as a SOFTWARE object type.

  The UPDCATLG.PRO change file profile follows:

```
TARGETDIR = D:\MIGCTLG

section catalog
BEGIN
 OBJECTTYPE = SOFTWARE
 globalname = UPDATE.SD.CATALOG.REF.1
END

SECTION FILESPECLIST
BEGIN
  FNDMIGTC.EXE
END

SECTION INSTALL
BEGIN
 PROGRAM = D:\MIGCTLG\FNDMIGTC.EXE
 PARMS   = D:\MIGCTLG\FNDMIGTC.LOG SEND
END
```

Note: You can skip this step if you do not want to save the NetView DM/2 catalog information. In the Install section the SEND parameter has been added to send the local objects to the server workstation.

- **On an OS/2 Server**

  This step explains how to prepare a change file profile to install and execute the FNDMIGCT.EXE utility. This utility transfers the information in the NetView DM/2 2.1 catalog entries from the NetView DM/2 2.1 to TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5. This utility requires the log file name and the NOSEND parameter as input parameters.

  You specify the SEND parameter to send the cataloged objects to the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5. server workstation. In this case you use the NOSEND parameter because the TME 10 TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 for OS/2 server has been installed on the same NetView DM/2 server workstation and the local objects are already on the workstation.

  The FNDMIGGTC.EXE utility is stored in the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5. product image\tools subdirectory. It interacts with the `cdm list * /Ws` NetView DM/2 command to identify the entries to be translated in the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 catalog. Only the cataloged and INRU entries are considered.

  If the object that you want to move from NetView DM/2 2.1 to TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 catalog is a change file and its object type is FLATDATA, it is re-cataloged in TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 as a SOFTWARE object type.

  The UPDCATLG.PRO change file profile follows:

```
TARGETDIR = D:\MIGCTLG

section catalog
begin
 OBJECTTYPE = SOFTWARE
 GLOBALNAME = UPDATE.SD.CATALOG.REF.1
end

SECTION FILESPECLIST
BEGIN
  FNDMIGCT.EXE
END

SECTION INSTALL
BEGIN
 PROGRAM = D:\MIGCTLG\FNDMIGCT.EXE
 PARMS   = D:\MIGCTLG\FNDMIGCT.LOG
END
```

Note: You can skip this step if you do not want to save the NetView DM/2 catalog information.

Step 9. Use the UPDFILES.PRO change file profile utility to build a change file to install and execute the DPFUPM.EXE utility

This step applies only if you are running the scenario using a TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5. OS/2 server, if you are using an AIX server skip this step.

The DPFUPM.EXE utility removes the cdm start statement from config.sys. The DPFUPM.EXE utility is stored in the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 IMG\SD4OS2\TOOLS product image subdirectory. The change file profile contains the following:

- DPFUPM.EXE
- UPDSTUP.TXT

  It represents the input modification file to modify the startup.cmd. It contains the following statements:

  – [c:\startup.cmd]
  – Addline(AFTER:CDM START)
  – rem cdm start
  – Deleteline()
  – cdm start

- MIGCFG.TXT

  It represents the input modification file to update `config.sys`. The change file profile used to update the config.sys is shown in the next step, „Use the UPDCONF.PRO Change File Profile“. The MIGCFG.TXT file contains the following statements:

  – [c:\config.sys]
  – Deleteline()

– set fndnotc=yes

The UPDFILES.PRO change file profile follows:

```
TARGETDIR = D:\UPDFILES

SECTION CATALOG
 BEGIN
   OBJECTTYPE = SOFTWARE
   GLOBALNAME = INSTALL.AND.EXEC.MODIFY.STARTUP.REF.1
 END

SECTION FILESPECLIST
 BEGIN
    DPFUPM.EXE
    UPDSTUP.TXT
    MIGCFG.TXT
 END

SECTION INSTALL
 BEGIN
  PROGRAM = $(TARGETDIR)\DPFUPM.EXE
  PARMS   = /MOD:$(TARGETDIR)\UPDSTUP.TXT
 END
```

Step 10. Use the UPDCONF.PRO change file profile to build a change file that removes the SET FNDNOTC=YES statement from the config.sys file.

This step applies only if you are running the scenario using a TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5. OS/2 server. If you are using an AIX server skip this step. The UPDCONF.PRO change file profile contains the install section to invoke the DPFUPM.EXE program that passes the MIGCFG.TXT modification as an input parameter.

The UPDCONF.PRO change file profile follows:

```
TARGETDIR= D:\UPDFILES

SECTION CATALOG
 BEGIN
  OBJECTTYPE = SOFTWARE
  GLOBALNAME = MODIFY.CFG.REF.1
 END

SECTION INSTALL
 BEGIN
  PROGRAM = $(TARGETDIR)\DPFUPM.EXE
  PARMS   = /MOD:$(TARGETDIR)\MIGCFG.TXT
 END
```

Step 11. Prevent the Transmission Controller from restarting.

This step applies only if you are running the scenario using a TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5. OS/2 server. if you are using

an AIX server or if you do not use the NetView DM/2 dialog on your OS/2 server, skip this step and go to „Catalog the CDMSTOP.CMD Porcedure.“.

Your target machine might be configured so that when it restarts after a reboot, all the active applications that you have in the desktop are started. If your target machine is so configured, and the NetView DM/2 is active and is configured to start automatically, Transmission Controller restarts even if you removed the `cdm start` command from the startup.cmd file.

To prevent that Transmission Controller from restarting do the following:

a. Start the NetView DM/2 Dialog in the NetView DM/2 preparation site.

b. Select **Engine** from the menu bar and then select **Startup options**. The Startup Options window appears.

c. Deselect the **Agent** and **Manager** push button and select the **Inactive** radio button for the Transmission Controller, then select OK. The startup.ooo file is created in the IBMNVDM2\BIN directory.

d. Copy the startup.ooo file on a directory

e. Build a change file to install it in the IBMNVD2\BIN using the STOPDLG.PRO change file profile.

The STOPDLG.PRO change file profile follows:

```
TARGETDIR = D:\IBMNVDM2\BIN

SECTION CATALOG
 BEGIN
  OBJECTTYPE = SOFTWARE
  GLOBALNAME = STOP.DIALOG.TC.REF.1
 END

SECTION FILESPECLIST
 BEGIN
  STARTUP.OOO
 END
```

Step 12. Use the /TXT option to catalog the CDMSTOP.CMD procedure that executes the CDM STOP command.

It is executed on the client after the installation of the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 for OS/2 product. You can use the CDMSTOP.CMD procedure stored in the SHARE_A\IMG\SD4OS2\SAMPLES/NVDM2 directory.

Enter the following command:

```
CDM CATALOG PROCEDURE EXECUTE.CDM.STOP FS:\CDMSTOP.CMD /TXT
```

Step 13. Use the NVDMUNIN.EXE utility to uninstall NetView DM/2 2.1 from the clients and server.

- Prepare a change file that contains the installation and the execution of the NetView DM/2 NVDMUNIN.EXE utility, to uninstall NetView DM/2 2.1

from the server and the clients. The NVDMUNIN.EXE utility removes the NetView DM/2 2.1 from the server and clients of your network.

- Download the NVDMUNIN.EXE utility from DM2TOOLS. Be sure that you use the utility contained in the DM2F4SDM package of the DM2TOOLS repository.

  You cannot invoke NVDMUNIN.EXE directly from a client workstation because this utility is designed to be executed in attended way from the CID images directory of a server.

- Run the NVDMUNIN.EXE utility unattended pass the YES.IMP file to the UNIN.CMD utility that invokes NVDMUNIN.EXE as follows:

  ```
  /**/
  'C:\DEINST\NVDMUNIN.EXE <C:\DEINST\YES.INP
  exit rc
  ```

- On the clients workstation you execute NVDMUNIN.EXE in a different directory from the NetView DM/2 image directory. For this reason you must install also the ANXTAB_X.LST and SYSLEVEL._DM files in the directory where the NVDMUNIN.EXE utility is installed. They are stored in the NetView DM/2 images directory.

Note: You cannot use the $(SA) and the $(SB) keys in the UNIN.PRO change file profile, because they are not defined yet. You can define them with the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 addpm command using the command line interface.

The UNIN.PRO change file profile follows:

```
TARGETDIR = C:\DEINST

SECTION CATALOG
 BEGIN
  OBJECTTYPE = SOFTWARE
  GLOBALNAME = UNINSTALL.NVDM2.REF.1
 END

SECTION FILESPECLIST
 BEGIN
    UNIN.CMD
    YES.INP
    NVDMUNIN.EXE
    SYSLEVEL._DM
    ANXTAB_X.LST
 END

SECTION INSTALL
 BEGIN
  PROGRAM = C:\DEINST\UNIN.CMD
 END
```

Step 14. Perform this step only if you are using the NVDMUPO.EXE and NVDMUPFS.EXE DiskCamera utilities in the Section Install of your NetView DM/2 change file profiles.

Do the following:

a. Create the DSKSUPP directory

b. Copy the following NetView DM/2 files into the DSKSUPP directory:

- NVDMUPO.EXE
- NVDMUPFS.EXE

  These are stored in the IBMNVDM2\BIN directory.

- ANXDBCS.DLL
- NDMNLS.DLL

  These are stored in the IBMNVDM2\DLL directory.

c. Build a package to install these files in the SOFTDIST\BIN directory of software distribution. Use as sourcedir for the build command the DSKSUPP directory.

The DSKSUPP.PRO profile that you can use to build the package follows:

```
TARGETDIR = D:\SOFTDIST\BIN

SECTION CATALOG
 BEGIN
  GLOBALNAME = NVDM2.OS2.DISKCAMERA.REF.1
  OBJECTTYPE = SOFTWARE
 END

SECTION FILESPECLIST
 BEGIN
  NVDMUPO.EXE
  NVDMUPFS.EXE
  ANXDBCS.DLL
  NDMNLS.DLL
 END

TARGETDIR = D:\SOFTDIST\BIN
```

Step 15. If your environment is composed by NetView DM/2 DOS and Windows clients, you must also now prepare the change files described in the Steps from 1 to 6 of Part Five. „Migrating the NetView DM/2 DOS and Windows Clients“.

Step 16. Send all the objects you created in the previous steps from the NetView DM/2 preparation site to the NetView DM for MVS 1.6.1 focal point.

Migration Part Two A: Executing the Scenario on an OS/2 Platform

This part explains how to send and install all the change files that you need to run this scenario if you are in an OS/2 platform. Perform the following steps at a NetView DM for MVS 1.6.1 console.

If you are running the scenario on an AIX or Windows NT platform skip the following steps and go to Part Two B. Executing the Scenario on an AIX or Windows NT Platform.

Step 1. Send and install the TME10.SD.IMAGES.REF.1 images and the TME10.SD.RSPFILES.REF.1 response file

To install the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 CID images and response files on the NetView DM/2 server, you must send and install the TME10.SD.IMAGES.REF.1 change file and the TME10.SD.RSPFILES.REF.1 as corequisite.

Note: If you need to migrate the NetView DM/2 DOS and Windows clients do the following:

a. Send and install the TME10.SD.WIN31.IMAGES.REF.10 change file.

b. Send the change files described in the Steps from 1 to 6 of the Part Five. Migrating the NetView DM/2 DOS and Windows Clients.

Step 2. Send and Install as not removable the IBM.TME10.SERVER.REF.1 change file on the NetView DM/2 server, that contains the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 server feature.

In this step the NetView DM/2 server workstation restarts and makes the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 server feature active. The TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 Transmission Controller component does not start because the FNDNOTC=YES environment variable is set by the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5. installation procedure. See Step 9 of Migration Part One.

Step 3. Send the IBM.TME10.CLIENT.REF.1 change file that contains the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 client feature, to the NetView DM/2 server after the plan you executed in Step 2 has been completed.

Step 4. Install the IBM.TME10.CLIENT.REF.1 change file that contains the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 Client feature. as not removable to the NetView DM/2 clients.

During the product installation the workstation restarts and makes the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 client feature active. After the restart, each client is registered in the local TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 server database if you use the auto-registration feature.

If you want to migrate the NetView DM/2 DOS and Windows clients, perform the Step 8 and Step 9 in Part Five.„Migrating the NetView DM/2 DOS and Windows Clients“.

After you perform this step the LAN status is as follows:

- The TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 server feature is installed on the NetView DM/2 OS/2 server workstation.
- All the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 components are running except for the Transmission Controller component.
- The TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 client feature is installed and running on the NetView DM/2 OS/2 client workstations.

Step 5. Install the INSTALL.AND.EXEC.MODIFY.STARTUP.REF.1 change file on the NetView DM/2 server to remove the `cdm start` statement from the startup.cmd file.

Install the MODIFY.CFG.REF.1 change file as a co-requisite of the previous object, on NetView DM/2 server.

The MODIFY.CFG.REF.1 change file removes the FNDNOTC=YES statement from the config.sys file. If you necesary, see Step 8 of Part 1.„Preparing Objects“.

Step 6. Install the STOP.DIALOG.TC.REF.1 change file as a co-requisite on the NetView DM/2 server.

Step 7. Install the NEW.NDF.FOR.LT0235A0.REF.1 change file as removable on the NetView DM/2 server.

This change file installs the new NDF file.

Step 8. Install the VERIFY.NEW.NDF.FOR.LT0235A0.REF.1 change file on the NetView DM/2 server.

It executes the CMVERIFY command on the new NDF file.

Step 9. Change the status of the IRU objects to INRU

If you executed successfully the previous step, perform an accept request for the NEW.NDF.FOR.LT0235A0.REF.1 change file, to change the status of the IRU objects to INRU in the NetView DM/2 catalog.

Step 10. Schedule an activate request on the NetView DM/2 server.

Execute an activate function on the NetView DM/2 server to make the changes performed in Steps 5 to 8 active.

After the restart the NetView DM/2 server does not start. so the activate plan remains in pending status. All the installed TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 server components start, Transmission Controller included. All the reports related to the auto-registered TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 clients are sent to the NetView DM for MVS 1.6.1.

Because the NetView DM for MVS host node definitions are different from the NetView DM/2 and TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 node definitions, the reports are rejected as coming from unknown destinations, you can use these messages to be sure that all the client reports have been sent.

Step 11. Delete the pending activate requests.

Because the host node definitions are different from the NetView DM/2 and TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 node definitions, you must modify the RGN field for each node definition, passing from the network id (used by NvDM/2) to the local domain address of TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 server.

You can optimize this operation by writing a JCL batch job using the NetView DM for MVS Change Node function. If you use SPMF when you modify the RGN parameter of the server, you modify the RGN parameter of each client connected to the server automatically. In this scenario, we use the same name used for the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 server name. See the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 server response files. The workstation names are the same as those defined by the NetView DM/2

Step 12. Submit a plan to install the UPDATE.SD.CATALOG.REF.1 change file with the no-send option.

In this way you get the catalog information from the NetView DM/2 database and store it in the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5. database.

Step 13. Send the EXECUTE.CDM.STOP procedure to the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 server.

Then initiate the procedure on each TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 client to stop the NetView DM/2 clients.

Step 14. Send and install the UNINSTALL.NVDM2.REF.1 change file on the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 Server

Step 15. Install the UNINSTALL.NVDM2.REF.1 change file on all the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 clients.

If you want to migrate the NetView DM/2 DOS and Windows clients, you must use the DEINS.NVDM.REF.1 change file as described in Part Five, This because the NVDMUNIN tool is not supported in the DOS environment.

Step 16. If necessary, to make the changes active immediately send an activate request to the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 server.

When the server activate request is completed, send an activate request to all TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 clients.

After you perform Part Two A the LAN status is as follows:

- The TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 server feature is installed on the old NetView DM/2 server.
- The TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 client feature is installed and running on the NetView DM/2 client workstations.

Step 17. Perform this step only if you used the NVDMUPO.EXE and NVDMUPFS.EXE DiskCamera utilities in the Section Install part of your NetView DM/2 change file profiles, in “Migration Part One. Preparing Objects”.

Install the package NVDM2.OS2.DISKCAMERA.REF.1 in all the workstations that you migrated.

Migration Part Two B: Executing the Scenario on an AIX, or Windows NT, or NetWare Platform

This part explains how to migrate the NetView DM/2 clients and server to the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 client. The NetView DM/2 server will be a client after the migration. A new AIX, or Windows NT, or NetWare server will be attached to the LAN.

Before you run this scenario, install the TCP/IP protocol and NFS. The NetView DM/2 2.1 server is migrated to the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 client.

If you are running the scenario on an OS/2 platform skip the following steps and go to Part Two A.„Executing the Scenario on an OS/2 Platform ".

Set up an AIX, NetWare or Windows NT workstation installing the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 Server features and its prerequisites. Connect this workstation to the LAN that is to be migrated.

Note: If the server platform is an AIX, NetWare, or Windows NT workstation the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 for OS/2 client must also be installed on the NetView DM/2 server workstation in order to migrate the NetView DM/2 catalog to the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 catalog.

Perform the following steps at a NetView DM for MVS 1.6.1 console.

Step 1. To install the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 CID images and response files on the NetView DM/2 server, you must send and install the TME10.SD.IMAGES.REF.1 change file and the TME10.SD.RSPFILES.REF.1 as a corequisite.

Note: If you want to migrate the NetView DM/2 DOS and Windows Clients do the following:

a. Send and install the TME10.SD.WIN31.IMAGES.REF.10 change file.

b. Send the change files described in Steps from 1 to 6 of the Part Five. „Migrating the NetView DM/2 DOS and Windows Clients".

Step 2. Send the IBM.TME10.CLIENT.REF.1 change file that contains the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 client feature to the NetView DM/2 server after the plan you executed in Step 1 has been completed.

Note: If you want to migrate the DOS and Windows Clients perform steps 8 and 9 in Part Five. „Migrating the NetView DM/2 DOS and Windows Clients".

Step 3. Install the IBM.TME10.CLIENT.REF.1 change file that contains the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 Client feature as not removable to the NetView DM/2 clients.

During the product installation the workstation restarts and makes the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 client feature active. After the restart, each client is registered in the local TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 server database, if you use the auto-registration feature.

After the restart all the reports related to the auto-registered TME 10 TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 Clients are received by TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5. for AIX server. The TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5. for AIX server sends the reports to the NetView DM for MVS 1.6.1. In this way the new nodes are defined to the host.

Step 4. To use the old node definition, you must delete all the new nodes Modify the old node definitions according to the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 rules, changing the RGN parameter with the server domain address. The old NetView DM/2 2.1 server must be configured as a TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 client. You must delete Its name as a DCCS node type and redefine it as a CLNT node type.

Step 5. Change all the NetView DM/2 2.1 and NetView DM for MVS 1.6.1 plans to reflect that the old NetView DM/2 2.1 server is now a client.

After you perform this step the LAN status is as follows:

- The TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 server feature is installed on the AIX, NetWare or Windows NT server workstation.
- The TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 client feature is installed and running on the NetView DM/2 2.1 for OS/2 client workstations and on the NetView DM/2 2.1 for OS/2 server workstation.

Step 6. Send the UPDATE.SD.CATALOG.REF.1 change file to the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 for AIX server.

Step 7. Submit a plan to install the UPDATE.SD.CATALOG.REF.1 on the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 client installed on the NetView DM/2 2.1 server, to get the catalog information from the NetView DM/2 database.

Step 8. Store it in the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5. for AIX server database and send the local objects, if any, to the new server.

Step 9. Send the EXECUTE.CDM.STOP procedure to the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 server

Then initiate the procedure on each TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5. client to stop the NetView DM/2 clients.

Step 10. To uninstall the NetView DM/2 2.1 from the clients, send the UNINSTALL.NVDM2.REF.1 change file to the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5. for an AIX server and install the UNINSTALL.NVDM2.REF.1 change file on all the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 clients.

Step 11. If you need to make the changes active immediately, send an activate request to the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 clients.

After you complete Part Two B the LAN status is as follows:

- The TCP/IP and the NFS client are installed and running on each client
- The TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 server feature is installed on the AIX, NetWare, or Windows NT server workstation.

- The TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 client feature is installed and running on the NetView DM/2 for OS/2 client workstations and on the NetView DM/2 server workstation.

Step 12. Perform this step only if you used the NVDMUPO.EXE and NVDMUPFS.EXE DiskCamera utilities in the Section Install part of your NetView DM/2 change file profiles, in “Migration Part One. Preparing Objects”.

Install the package NVDM2.OS2.DISKCAMERA.REF.1 in all the workstations that you migrated.

Migration Part Three: Run a Roll Back Scenario

If the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 is not successfully installed, run the roll back scenario to clean up the environments. The roll back can not be executed if the NetView DM/2 2.1 product has been removed from the workstations. In Part Two A. „Executing the Scenario on an OS/2 Platform“ a rollback is possible until you perform Step 9:

To run the roll-back scenario perform the following steps:

1. Disconnect the AIX machine from the Local Network, if present.
2. On NetView DM for MVS 1.6.1, migrate the node definition back from TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 to the NetView DM/2 2.1 format.
3. From the host, if necessary, issue a remove request to NetView DM/2 to remove the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5. customized Communication Manager file that you previously installed as removable.
4. On the NetView DM/2 preparation site build, the change files to uninstall the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5. client and server components.

   An example of the UNINTME.SRV change file profile to use to uninstall the server on OS/2 platform follows:

```
TARGETDIR = D:\
SECTION CATALOG
 BEGIN
   OBJECTTYPE = SOFTWARE
   GLOBALNAME = UNINST.IBM.TME10.SERVER.REF.1
 END
SECTION INSTALL
begin
    PROGRAM = $(SOURCEDIR)\INSTALL.EXE
    PARMS   = /s:$(SOURCEDIR) /r:$(RESPONSEFILE) ►
              /L1:$(logfile1) /L2:$(logfile2) /A:D /X
    SOURCEDIR      = SA:\img\sd4os2\images
    RESPONSEFILE   = SA:\rsp\sd4os2\$(WORKSTATNAME).RSP
    logfile1       = SA:\LOGS\$(WORKSTATNAME).lg1
    logfile2       = SA:\LOGS\$(WORKSTATNAME).lg2
end
```

An example of the UNINTME.CLT change file profile to use to uninstall the clients follows:

```
 TARGETDIR = D:\
  section catalog
 begin
  OBJECTTYPE = SOFTWARE
  globalname = UNINST.IBM.TME10.CLIENT.REF.1
 end

section install
begin
 PROGRAM = $(SOURCEDIR)\INSTALL.EXE
 PARMS   = /s:$(SOURCEDIR) /r:$(RESPONSEFILE) /L1:$(logfile1) ►
           /L2:$(logfile2) /A:D /X
 SOURCEDIR         = SA:\img\sd4os2\images
 RESPONSEFILE      = SA:\rsp\sd4os2\$(WORKSTATNAME).RSP
 logfile1          = SA:\LOGS\$(WORKSTATNAME).lg1
 logfile2          = SA:\LOGS\$(WORKSTATNAME).lg2
end
```

5. Send these change files to the NetView DM for MVS 1.6.1 host.
6. From the NetView DM for MVS 1.6.1 host, issue a CID install request to NetView DM/2 to remove the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5. server and clients from the LAN.
7. Invoke the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 installation procedure using the `/A:D` command line parameter. The TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 product will be removed.

Migration Part Four: Installing the Anxifs Redirector

To perform CID installation through the NetBIOS protocols stack, install the Network File Services tools. This part explains how to install the Anxifs Client/Server mechanism.

No specific redirection mechanism is not a prerequisite for TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5. You can install and use whichever redirector you want to perform CID redirected installation.

In this scenario we assume that the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5. for OS/2 server workstation is the image server too. The Image server is the workstation where the CID product images are stored.

Migration Part Four A. Installing the Anxifs Server on the OS/2 Server Workstation

To install the Anxifs server on the OS/2 server workstation perform the following steps from the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5. preparation site:

1. Use the anxsrv.pro change file profile provided as an example to install the Anxifs server tool on the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 server.

2. Modify the anxsrv.pro change file profile to customize the path, the file names, and the name of the Anxifs server to match your environment.

   The name of the Anxifs server must be passed as a parameter to the postreq command procedure.

   The ANXSRV.PRO change file profile follows:

```
GLOBAL NAME:      IBM.ANXSRV.REF.1
DESCRIPTION:      IBM Anxifs server tool for OS/2
CHANGE FILE TYPE: GEN
COMPRESSION TYPE: LZW
POSTREQ COMMAND:  $(FILEPATH)bin\anxsrv.cmd SRVNAME $(BOOTDRIVE)

OBJECT:
 SOURCE NAME:     d:\ibmnvdm2\share_A\img\sd4os2\pristine\server\*.EXE
 TARGET NAME:     $(FILEPATH)BIN\*.EXE
 TYPE:            FILE
 ACTION:          COPY

OBJECT:
 SOURCE NAME:     d:\ibmnvdm2\share_A\img\sd4os2\pristine\server\*.DLL
 TARGET NAME:     $(FILEPATH)BIN\*.DLL
 TYPE:            FILE
 ACTION:          COPY

OBJECT:
 SOURCE NAME:     d:\ibmnvdm2\share_A\img\sd4os2\pristine\server\anxsrv.cmd
 TARGET NAME:     $(FILEPATH)BIN\anxsrv.cmd
 TYPE:            FILE
 ACTION:          COPY
```

   In this profile the ANXSRV.CMD postreq command is invoked.

   Copy the ANXSRV.CMD postreq command in the proper directory. In this scenario the directory is d:\ibmnvdm2\share_A\img\sd4os2\pristine\server\.

   When the ANXSRV.CMD file is invoked it creates the ANXSRV.INI file in the directory where the Anxifs is installed. The ANXSRV.INI file contains the Anxifs server parameters. For more details see the comments in the ANXSRV.CMD file. You can modify them in the ANXSRV.CMD before you build the change file.

   The name of the Anxifs server is passed as a parameter, because it is suggested that you use different names for each Anxifs server in your LAN. The ANXSRV.CMD file adds the command to start the Anxifs server on top of your startup.cmd file after the machine is restarted.

   The ANXSRV.CMD file follows:

```
@rem /*------------------------------------------------ */
@rem /* Customize here the parameters to be included in   */
@rem /* anxsrv.ini file                                  */
@rem /* the server name is passed as parameter           */
@rem /*                                                  */
@rem /* %1 is the Anxifs Server name, %2 is the Bootdrive */
@rem /*------------------------------------------------ */

@rem used adapter (0 or 1)
@ECHO Adapter=0;                                  > %NVDMBASE%\bin\anxsrv.ini
@rem number of clients
@ECHO Numclients=20                               >> %NVDMBASE%\bin\anxsrv.ini
@rem disk and aliasname
@ECHO alias=rw,single,IMGSRV,D:\IBMNVDM2\SHARE_A >> %NVDMBASE%\bin\anxsrv.ini
@rem servername
@ECHO servername=%1                                >> %NVDMBASE%\bin\anxsrv.ini

@rem /*-----------------------------------------------*/
@rem /* update the startup.cmd file by adding on top */
@rem /* the start of anxifs server                    */
@rem /*---------------------------------------------- */


@ECHO call %NVDMBASE%\bin\apiserv.exe %nvdmbase%\bin\anxsrv.ini ►
                >> %2\startup.if
@TYPE %2\STARTUP.CMD >> %2\STARTUP.IFS
@COPY %2\STARTUP.IFS %2\STARTUP.CMD
@DEL  %2\STARTUP.IFS
```

3. Use the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5. command line interface to build the change file by entering the following command:

   ```
   nvdm bld <change file profile path>\anxsrv.pro
   ```

4. Send the change file to NetView DM for MVS and then distribute it on the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 for OS/2 server.
5. Activate the server where the change file has been installed to active the changes to the startup.cmd.

Migration Part Four B. Installing the Anxifs Client on the OS/2 Client Workstation

To install the Anxifs client on the OS/2 client workstation perform the following steps from the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5. preparation site:

1. Use the anxclt.pro change file profile provided as an example, to install the Anxifs client tool on the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 client.
2. Modify the anxclt.pro change file profile to customize the path, the file names, and the name of the Anxifs server to match your environment.

   The name of the Anxifs server must be passed as a parameter to the postreq command procedure.

The ANXCLT.PRO change file profile follows:

```
GLOBAL NAME:      IBM.ANXCLT.REF.1
DESCRIPTION:      IBM Anxifs client tool for OS/2
CHANGE FILE TYPE: GEN
COMPRESSION TYPE: LZW
POSTREQ COMMAND:  $(FILEPATH)bin\anxclt.cmd SRVNAME $(BOOTDRIVE)

OBJECT:
 SOURCE NAME:     d:\ibmnvdm2\share_A\img\sd4os2\pristine\client\anxifcom.*
 TARGET NAME:     $(FILEPATH)BIN\anxifcom.*
 TYPE:            FILE
 ACTION:          COPY

OBJECT:
 SOURCE NAME:     d:\ibmnvdm2\share_A\img\sd4os2\pristine\client\anxifpid.sys
 TARGET NAME:     $(FILEPATH)BIN\anxifpid.sys
 TYPE:            FILE
 ACTION:          COPY

OBJECT:
 SOURCE NAME:     d:\ibmnvdm2\share_A\img\sd4os2\pristine\client\*msg
 TARGET NAME:     $(FILEPATH)BIN\*msg.
 TYPE:            FILE
 ACTION:          COPY

OBJECT:
 SOURCE NAME:     d:\ibmnvdm2\share_A\img\sd4os2\pristine\client\*exe
 TARGET NAME:     $(FILEPATH)BIN\*exe.
 TYPE:            FILE
 ACTION:          COPY

OBJECT:
 SOURCE NAME:     d:\ibmnvdm2\share_A\img\sd4os2\pristine\client\anxclt.cmd
 TARGET NAME:     $(FILEPATH)BIN\anxclt.cmd.
 TYPE:            FILE
 ACTION:          COPY
```

In this profile the ANXCLT.CMD postreq command is invoked.

Copy the ANXCLT.CMD postreq command in the appropriate directory. In this scenario the directory is d:\ibmnvdm2\share_A\img\sd4os2\pristine\client\.

When the ANXCLT.CMD file is invoked it creates the ANXCLT.INI file in the directory where the Anxifs is installed.

The ANXCLT.INI file contains the Anxifs client parameters. For more details see the comments in the ANXCLT.CMD file. You can modify them in the ANXCLT.CMD before you build the change file.

For example, you can change the drive letter to be used for the redirected drive. In this example, Z: is the redirected drive.

The name of the Anxifs server is passed as a parameter, because it is suggested that you use different names for each Anxifs server in your LAN. The ANXCLT.CMD file appends three statements for the Anxifs to your config.sys file.

The ANXCLT.CMD file:

```
@rem /*-----------------------------------------------*/
@rem /*Customize here the parameters to be included in */
@rem /*anxclt.ini file                                */
@rem /*the server name is passed as parameter         */
@rem /*                                              */
@rem /*%1 is the Anxifs Server name,                  */
@rem /*%2 is the OS/2 Bootdrive,                     */
@rem /*---------------------------------------------- */

@rem used adapter (0 or 1)
@ECHO Adapter=0;                        > %NVDMBASE%\bin\anxclt.ini
@Max numbers of attach
@ECHO numattaches=4                     >> %NVDMBASE%\bin\anxclt.ini
@rem drive to be attached
@atsign.ECHO attach=Z,%1,IMGSRV         >> %NVDMBASE%\bin\anxclt.ini

@rem /*-------------------------------------*/
@rem /* update the config.sys file          */
@rem /* %1 is the Anxifs Server name,       */
@rem /* %2 is the OS/2 Bootdrive,           */
@rem /* -------------------------------------*/


@ECHO DEVICE=%NVDMBASE%\bin\anxifpid.sys     >> %2\config.sys
@ECHO DEVICE=%NVDMBASE%\bin\anxifcom.sys     >> %2\config.sys
@IFS        =%NVDMBASE%\bin\anxifcom.ifs     >> %2\config.sys
```

3. Use the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 command line interface to build the change file by entering the following command:

   ```
   nvdm bld <change file profile path>\anxclt.pro
   ```

4. Send the change file to NetView DM for MVS and then distribute it on the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 for OS/2 clients.
5. Activate the clients where the change file has been installed to active the changes to the config.sys.

Migration Part Five: Migrating the NetView DM/2 DOS and Windows Clients

This part explains how to migrate the NetView DM/2 DOS and Windows clients (which are in a LAN with a NetView DM/2 2.1 server connected to a NetView DM for MVS 1.6.1 focal point through LU 6.2) to a TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 for Windows clients.

The NetView DM/2 2.1 server is connected to the DOS and Windows clients through NetBIOS. The protocol connection will also be NetBIOS after the clients are migrate to the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 product.

To run this scenario use a NetView DM/2 2.1 preparation site connected to a NetView DM for MVS 1.6.1 focal point. The preparation site is a dual boot workstation with OS/2 and DOS or Windows installed.

You must install the NVDMWCAM utility on the DOS or Windows partition. This Utility creates the nvdmtmp.pro change file profile and `nvdmtmp.mod` modification file that you need to install TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5. for Windows.

If the image root directory is NetView DM/2 SHARE_A, the product CID directory image structure is added to the SHARE_A directory as follows:

```
SHARE_A\IMG\
           \SD4W31\
                    UNATTENDED.PKG
                    INSTALL.EXE
                    INSTALL.IN_
                    NVDMCAT.ICF
                    NVDMDSC.DSC
                    NVDMPKG.PKG
                    SDISTCLT.RSP
                   \MOBILE
                   \CLIENT
                   \GUI
                   \COMMON
                   \DOC
```

1. To prepare the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 response files to perform a CID installation, use the CDOS61.RSP response file as an example.

   In this scenario we use the name `<workstation name>.rsp` to have a unique change file for the CID installation.

   The response files are stored in the SHARE_A\RSP subdirectory.

   Because NetView DM/2 is case sensitive for the workstation, logical units, networkid, etc., you must use only uppercase in the response file.

   The CDOS61.RSP response file follows:

```
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;
; TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 for Windows Response File
;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;;

; Target path
FILE = C:\SOFTDIST

; Work area
; It's the path for the data directory
WORK = C:\SOFTDIST

; TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 to install
COMP = Set Unattended installation
COMP = Distribution Client

UNATTENDED   = "1"
DELETEBACKUP = No
SAVEBACKUP   = Yes
CFGUPDATE    = Auto
OVERWRITE    = Yes
PROTOCOL     = NBI
SERVERNAME   = LT0235A0
SERVERADDR   = LT0235A0
WRKNAME      = CDOS61
WRKADDR      = CDOS61
TRGADDR      = CDOS61
```

2. To prepare a change file profile that contains the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5. CID images, the response file, and the profile directories, use the WIN31IMG.PRO change file profile as an example.

   The change file profile WIN31IMG.PRO follows:

```
TARGETDIR = SA:\
SECTION CATALOG
 BEGIN
  OBJECTTYPE = SOFTWARE
  GLOBALNAME = TME10.SD.WIN31.IMAGES.REF.1
 END

SECTION FILESPECLIST
BEGIN
  \IMG\SD4W31\*.* /IS
  \RSP\SD4W31\*.*
END
```

3. To use the NVDMWCAM utility to create the NVDMTMP.PRO change file profile and the NVDMTMP.MOD modification file perform the following steps:

   a. Boot the preparation site in DOS or Windows 3.11 mode.

   b. Install the WIN32s on the Windows 3.11 workstation to install the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 product.

The WIN32s have been provided by Microsoft in the PW1118.EXE package. The PW1118.EXE package is a free self-extracting PW1118.EXE available on the ftp site: ftp.microsoft.com.

c. Boot the preparation site on Windows 3.11.

d. Copy the PW1118.EXE package in the C:\WIN32S subdirectory.

e. Extract the WIN32s.

f. Run the nvdmwcam utility to create the profile and the modification file by entering the following command from the run statement:

```
NVDMWCAM  <driver>:  C:\WIN32S\SETUP.EXE
```

The nvdmwcam utility creates the nvdmtmp.pro change file profile and nvdmtmp.mod modification file in the <drive>:\nvdmtmp\.

The NVDMTMP.MOD modification file follows:

```
[SYSTEM.INI]
AddUniqueKeyPrf(boot,drivers)
mmsystem.dll winmm16.dll
AddMultipleKeyPrf(386Enh,device)
:(WindowsDir)\SYSTEM\WIN32S\W32S.386
```

The NVDMTMP.PRO profile follows:

```
TARGETDIR = C:
SECTION CATALOG
 BEGIN
    OBJECTTYPE = SOFTWARE
    GLOBALNAME = WIN32S.FILES.REF.1
 END
SECTION FILESPECLIST
 BEGIN
  *.* /IS
 END
SECTION INSTALL
 BEGIN
  PROGRAM = NVDMWIN.EXE
  PARMS   = NVDMWUPD.EXE C:\DSKCAM\NVDMTMP.MOD /B:C
 END
```

g. Reboot the preparation site in OS/2 mode.

4. Create and build the INSHARE.PRO change file profile to add the share statement.

The installation procedure TME TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 for Windows requires the share statement installed in the AUTOEXEC.BAT file. To install it you must build a change file that contains a modification file called INSHARE.MOD. This modification file changes the NetView DM/2 minimal configuration file by adding the share statement in the minimal agent environment.

The INSHARE.MOD modification file follows:

```
[c:\IBMNVDD2\BIN\ANXIDMCF.AUT\
AddLine(BOTTOM)
%* SHARE
```

The INSHARE.PRO change file profile follows:

```
TARGETDIR = C:\INSHARE

SECTION CATALOG
 BEGIN
  OBJECTTYPE = SOFTWARE
  GLOBALNAME = INSERT.SHARE.EXE.REF.1
 END

SECTION FILESPECLIST
 BEGIN
  INSHARE.MOD
 END

SECTION INSTALL
 BEGIN
  PROGRAM = nvdmupd.exe
  PARMS   = $(targetdir)\inshare.mod
 END
```

5. If the client workstation does not start Windows 3.11 automatically, use the nvdmupd.exe tool to upgrade the autoexec.bat file

To do this, build a change file that installs the `nvdmupd.exe` utility. Use the INSWIN.PRO change file profile as an example. It contains the INSWIN.MOD modification file, which follows:

```
[C:\AUTOEXEC.BAT]
AddLine(BOTTOM)
WIN
```

The INSWIN.PRO change file profile follows:

```
TARGETDIR = C:\INSHARE

SECTION CATALOG
 BEGIN
  OBJECTTYPE = SOFTWARE
  GLOBALNAME = INSERT.WIN.EXE.REF.1
 END

SECTION FILESPECLIST
 BEGIN
  INSWIN.MOD
 END

SECTION INSTALL
 BEGIN
  PROGRAM = NVDMUPD.EXE
  PARMS   = $(TARGETDIR)\INSWIN.MOD
 END
```

6. Use the SDINSCLT.PRO change file profile as an example to build the change files to install the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5. client on the NetView DM/2 DOS or Windows clients. The SDINCLT.PRO change file profile follows:

```
TARGETDIR = C:\

SECTION CATALOG
 BEGIN
   OBJECTTYPE = SOFTWARE
   GLOBALNAME = IBM.TME10W.CLIENT.REF.1
 END

SECTION install
BEGIN
  PROGRAM = NVDMWIN.EXE
  PARMS   = $(SOURCEDIR)\INSTALL.EXE /S:$(SOURCEDIR) /R:$(RESPONSEFILE) ►
            /L1:$(LOGFILE1) /A:I /X
  SOURCEDIR      = SA:\IMG\SD4W31
  RESPONSEFILE   = SA:\RSP\SD4W31\$(WORKSTATNAME).RSP
  LOGFILE1       = SA:\LOGS\$(WORKSTATNAME).LG1
END
```

7. Build the change files to uninstall the NetView DM/2 DOS client from the target workstation.

The TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5. for Windows does not support the NetView DM/2 change files therefore, the change file must be built on the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 server using the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5. profiles.

This change file invokes the DOS DELTREE command to remove the NetView DM/2 client directory structure. It also invokes the nvdmupd.exe tool to remove the NetView DM/2 startup statements from the DOS and Windows startup files (Autoexec.bat and Progman.ini).

The samples of the change file profile and the modification file follow:

```
GLOBAL NAME:      DEINS.NVDM2.REF.1
DESCRIPTION:      NONE
CHANGE FILE TYPE: GEN
COMPRESSION TYPE: NONE

PREREQ COMMAND:   DELTREE.EXE /Y C:\IBMNVDD2
POSTREQ COMMAND:  DPFUPD.EXE /MOD:C:\DEINS\DEINS.MOD

DEFAULT TOKEN:    TARGETDIR = C:\DEINS

OBJECT:
SOURCE NAME:      D:\DOSCL\DEINS.MOD
TARGET NAME:      $(TARGETDIR)\DEINS.MOD
TYPE:             FILE
ACTION:           COPY

\C:\AUTOEXEC.BAT\
DeleteLine()
SET NVDMBASE = C:\IBMNVDD2
DeleteLine()
C:\IBMNVDD2\BIN\LDR.COM /S=LT0235A0 /R=CDOS61 /T=300,10 /U=ACCEPT /A=0
DeleteToken(SET,PATH)
C:\IBMNVDD2\BIN
[PROGMAN.INI]
DeleteGroup(NetView DM/2)
```

Perform Steps 8 to 11 from a NetView DM for MVS 1.6.1 console:

8. Send and install the TME10.SD.WIN31.IMAGES.REF.1 change file in the NetView DM/2 shared area A of the server.

The TME10.SD.WIN31.IMAGES.REF.1 change file contains the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5. for Windows CID images and response file.

9. Send the WIN32S.FILE.REF.1 change file to the NetView DM/2 2.1 server and install it as not removable on the NetView DM/2 DOS client.

The WIN32S.FILE.REF.1 change file contains WIN32s windows support. You must install the INSERT.SHARE.EXE.REF.1 change file as co-requisite also.

10. Install the IBM.TME10.CLIENT.REF.1 change file as not removable on the NetView DM/2 2.1 DOS client.

The IBM.TME10.CLIENT.REF.1 change file contains the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 client feature. You must install the INSERT.WIN.EXE.REF.1 change file as co-requisite also.

11. Install the DEINS.NVDM2.REF.1 Change File

Install the DEINS.NVDM2.REF.1 change file as not removable to the TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 for Windows.

It contains the instructions for removing the NetView DM/2 2.1 DOS and Windows clients.

Chapter 11. OS/2 2.2.1 TME 10 Software Distribution, Version 3.1.5 to Warp 3.0.1 Migration Scenario

This scenario demonstrates how to migrate the operating system of a TME 10 Software Distribution client from OS/2 2.11 (level XRU6200) to OS/2 Warp 3.01 (level XR03005). It leaves the boot drive the same as under OS/2 2.11. To accomplish the migration, you perform the following steps:

1. At the OS/2 distribution server, prepare the diskette images for the CID installation of OS/2 Warp, prepare the response file for Warp installation, and, optionally, customize some of the procedures used in running the scenario.
2. Build a software object for OS/2 Warp.
3. Install the software object on the TME 10 Software Distribution Client. This installation does the following at the client:
   a. Performs a maintenance install of OS/2 Warp 3.01.
   b. Before the system is rebooted to start in maintenance, executes a REXX procedure (MAINTCFG.CMD) to modify the maintenance CONFIG.SYS so that when the system is restarted in maintenance, the client can connect the TME 10 Software Distribution server.
   c. Performs a CID install of OS/2 Warp 3.01 via SEINST command.
   d. Before the OS/2 Warp system is rebooted, executes a utility program (DPFUPM.EXE) to put the communication-related statements in CONFIG.SYS in the correct order.

Environment

The scenario requires an OS/2 client with the following software:

- IBM OS/2 Base Operating System Version 2.11 level XRU6200
- IBM OS/2 LAN Adapter and Protocol Support Version 2.60.5 level WR08000
- IBM OS/2 Socket/Multi-Protocol Transport Services Version 2.00.1 level WR08000
- NFS for TCP/IP on OS/2 2.0 and 2.1 Version 2.00 level UN00000
- IBM TCP/IP for OS/2 Version 3.00 level IC00000

Note that for each of these products, there must be only one SYSLEVEL file on the machine. This is because the update of the maintenance CONFIG.SYS is based on a search of the SYSLEVEL files for these products.

Files Supplied

The following files are supplied on the product CD-ROM under SD4OS2\TOOLS for use in running this scenario:

- WARP.PRF (a software object profile for OS/2 Warp).

- WARP.RSP (a response file for OS/2 Warp).
- MAINTCFG.CMD (a procedure to modify the CONFIG.SYS of the maintenance system).
- DPFUPM.EXE (a utility to modify the CONFIG.SYS of the OS/2 Warp system). It ensures that, before the reboot, the following statements are inserted in CONFIG.SYS before any other DEVICE statements related to communications:

  ```
  DEVICE=C:\IBMCOM\PROTOCOL\LANPDD.OS2>)
  DEVICE=C:\IBMCOM\PROTOCOL\LANVDD.OS2>)
  DEVICE=C:\IBMCOM\LANMSGDD.OS2 /I:C:\IBMCOM>)
  DEVICE=C:\IBMCOM\PROTMAN.OS2 /I:C:\IBMCOM>)
  ```

  You can substitute a different utility by changing the reference to DPFUPM.EXE in the response file WARP.RSP.
- UPDCFG.TXT (input modification file for DPFUPM.EXE). You can modify this file if you want (for example, to change the drive letter on the DEVICE= statements) before running the migration.

Migration Procedure

To run the scenario, do the following steps:

1. Use the XCOPY command with the /S option to copy the entire directory OS2IMAGE of the Warp CD-ROM or installation diskette into your CID directory structure at the server (for purposes of this scenario, E:\CID\IMG\WARP).
2. Copy into the same directory the files of the directory CID\EXE\OS2 from the CD-ROM or installation diskettes.
3. Copy the response file WARP.RSP into the directory E:\CID\RSP\WARP
4. Copy into the directory E:\CID\PROC\WARP the files MAINTCFG.CMD, DPFUPM.EXE, and UPDCFG.TXT.

After these steps the directory structure will be as follows:

```
E:\CID
     |
     |--IMG-|
     |      |
     |      |-WARP-|
     |             |-DISK_0
     |             |-DISK_1
     |             |  .
     |             |  .
     |             |  .
     |             |  .
     |--RSP-|
     |      |
     |      |-WARP-|
     |             |-WARP.RSP
     |-PROC-|
            |
            |-WARP-|
                   |-MAINTCFG.CMD
                   |-UPDCFG.TXT
                   |-DPFUPM.EXE
```

5. Customize the provided software object profile, WARP.PRF, by changing the client name *client6* to the system name of your client.
6. Build the software object UPDATE.OS2_WARP.CIDINST.REF.3.00, using the command:

   ```
   NVDM BLD WARP.PRF
   ```

7. Install the software object on the client, using the command:

   ```
   NVDM INST UPDATE.OS2_WARP.CIDINST.REF.3.00 -w <clientname> -n
   ```

Communicating Your Comments to IBM

TME® 10 Software Distribution
Pristine and Migration Scenarios
Version 3.1.5

If you especially like or dislike anything about this book, please use one of the methods listed below to send your comments to IBM. Whichever method you choose, make sure you send your name, address, and telephone number if you would like a reply.

Feel free to comment on specific errors or omissions, accuracy, organization, subject matter, or completeness of this book. However, the comments you send should pertain to only the information in this manual and the way in which the information is presented. To request additional publications, or to ask questions or make comments about the functions of IBM products or systems, you should talk to your IBM representative or to your IBM authorized remarketer.

When you send comments to IBM, you grant IBM a nonexclusive right to use or distribute your comments in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

If you prefer to send comments by mail, use the reader's comment form (RCF) at the back of this book. If you wish, you can give the RCF to the local branch office or IBM representative for postage-paid mailing.

If you prefer to send comments by fax, use this number, which is in Italy:

39+06+596+62077

If you prefer to send comments electronically, use this network ID:

ROMERCF at VNET.IBM.COM

Make sure to include the following in your note:

- Title and publication number of this book
- Page number or topic to which your comment applies

Help us help you!

TME® 10 Software Distribution
Pristine and Migration Scenarios
Version 3.1.5

We hope you find this publication useful, readable, and technically accurate, but only you can tell us! Your comments and suggestions will help us improve our technical publications. Please take a few minutes to let us know what you think by completing this form.

Overall, how satisfied are you with the information in this book?	Satisfied	Dissatisfied
	☐	☐

How satisfied are you that the information in this book is:	Satisfied	Dissatisfied
Accurate	☐	☐
Complete	☐	☐
Easy to find	☐	☐
Easy to understand	☐	☐
Well organized	☐	☐
Applicable to your task	☐	☐

Specific comments, problems, or suggestions:

Thank you for your response. When you send information to IBM, you grant IBM the right to use or distribute the information without incurring any obligation to you. You of course retain the right to use the information in any way you choose.

Name

Address

Company or Organization

Phone No.

Help us help you!

Cut or Fold
Along Line

Fold and Tape **Please do not staple** Fold and Tape

PLACE
POSTAGE
STAMP
HERE

License Use Management Information Development
Rome Tivoli Laboratory
IBM Italia S.p.A.
Via Sciangai, 53
00144 Rome
Italy

Fold and Tape **Please do not staple** Fold and Tape

Cut or Fold
Along Line

Distributed Electronically for Customer Printing